

World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Oncology*

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2018 January 15; 10(1): 1-61



REVIEW

- 1 Inflammation-associated microsatellite alterations: Mechanisms and significance in the prognosis of patients with colorectal cancer

Koi M, Tseng-Rogenski SS, Carethers JM

- 15 Advance in plasma *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for colorectal cancer early detection

Wang Y, Chen PM, Liu RB

MINIREVIEWS

- 23 Vitamin D in esophageal cancer: Is there a role for chemoprevention?

Rouphael C, Kamal A, Sanaka MR, Thota PN

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

- 31 Impact of duration of adjuvant chemotherapy in radically resected patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer

Wang QW, Zhang XT, Lu M, Shen L

Clinical Practice Study

- 40 Neoadjuvant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy plus concomitant 5-fluorouracil infusion in locally advanced rectal cancer: A phase II study

Gural Z, Saglam S, Yucel S, Kaytan-Saglam E, Asoglu O, Ordu C, Acun H, Sharifov R, Onder S, Kizir A, Oral EN

META-ANALYSIS

- 48 Comparison between laparoscopic and open surgery for large gastrointestinal stromal tumors: A meta-analysis

Cui JX, Gao YH, Xi HQ, Cai AZ, Zhang KC, Li JY, Wei B, Chen L

CASE REPORT

- 56 Leptomeningeal metastases originated from esophagogastric junction/gastric cancer: A brief report of two cases

Kountourakis P, Papamichael D, Haralambous H, Michael M, Nakos G, Lazaridou S, Fotiou E, Vassiliou V, Andreopoulos D

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology*, Anil Mishra, PhD, Doctor, Department of Allergy and Immunology, Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH 45229, United States

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology (*World J Gastrointest Oncol*, *WJGO*, online ISSN 1948-5204, DOI: 10.4251) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJGO covers topics concerning carcinogenesis, tumorigenesis, metastasis, diagnosis, prevention, prognosis, clinical manifestations, nutritional support, molecular mechanisms, and therapy of benign and malignant tumors of the digestive tract. The current columns of *WJGO* include editorial, frontier, diagnostic advances, therapeutics advances, field of vision, mini-reviews, review, topic highlight, medical ethics, original articles, case report, clinical case conference (Clinicopathological conference), and autobiography. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of gastrointestinal oncology diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJGO*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology is now indexed in Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch[®]), PubMed, and PubMed Central.

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Rui-Fang Li*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Li-Jun Cui*
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xiu-Xia Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

ISSN
 ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
 February 15, 2009

FREQUENCY
 Monthly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Hsin-Chen Lee, PhD, Professor, Institute of Pharmacology, School of Medicine, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei 112, Taiwan

Dimitrios H Roukos, MD, PhD, Professor, Personalized Cancer Genomic Medicine, Human Cancer Biobank Center, Ioannina University, Metabatiko Ktirio Panepistimiou Ioanninon, Office 229, Ioannina, TK 45110, Greece

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
 All editorial board members resources online at <http://www.wjgnet.com>

www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/editorialboard.htm

EDITORIAL OFFICE
 Xiu-Xia Song, Director
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology
 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
 7901 Stoneridge Drive, Suite 501, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
 Telephone: +1-925-2238242
 Fax: +1-925-2238243
 E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
 Help Desk: <http://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLISHER
 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
 7901 Stoneridge Drive,
 Suite 501, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
 Telephone: +1-925-2238242
 Fax: +1-925-2238243
 E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
 Help Desk: <http://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLICATION DATE
 January 15, 2018

COPYRIGHT
 © 2018 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

SPECIAL STATEMENT
 All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
<http://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204>

ONLINE SUBMISSION
<http://www.f6publishing.com>

Inflammation-associated microsatellite alterations: Mechanisms and significance in the prognosis of patients with colorectal cancer

Minoru Koi, Stephanie S Tseng-Rogenski, John M Carethers

Minoru Koi, Stephanie S Tseng-Rogenski, John M Carethers, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine and Comprehensive Cancer Center, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI 48109-5368, United States

ORCID number: Minoru Koi (0000-0002-1195-071X); Stephanie S Tseng-Rogenski (0000-0001-5195-3176); John M Carethers (0000-0003-2623-7332).

Author contributions: All three authors wrote and edited this manuscript.

Supported by United States Public Health Service, Nos. DK067287, CA162147 and CA206010; and the A. Alfred Taubman Medical Research Institute of the University of Michigan. The funders had no role in study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: John M Carethers, BSc, MD, Full Professor, Professor and Chair, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, and Comprehensive Cancer Center, University of Michigan, 3101 Taubman Center, 1500 East Medical Center Drive, Ann Arbor, MI 48109-5368, United States. jcarethe@umich.edu
Telephone: +1-734-6151717
Fax: +1-734-9367024

Received: October 26, 2017

Peer-review started: October 29, 2017

First decision: November 23, 2017

Revised: November 29, 2017

Accepted: December 6, 2017

Article in press: December 6, 2017

Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract

Microsatellite alterations within genomic DNA frameshift as a result of defective DNA mismatch repair (MMR). About 15% of sporadic colorectal cancers (CRCs) manifest hypermethylation of the DNA MMR gene *MLH1*, resulting in mono- and di-nucleotide frameshifts to classify it as microsatellite instability-high (MSI-H) and hypermutated, and due to frameshifts at coding microsatellites generating neo-antigens, produce a robust protective immune response that can be enhanced with immune checkpoint blockade. More commonly, approximately 50% of sporadic non-MSI-H CRCs demonstrate frameshifts at di- and tetra-nucleotide microsatellites to classify it as MSI-low/elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotide repeats (EMAST) as a result of functional somatic inactivation of the DNA MMR protein MSH3 *via* a nuclear-to-cytosolic displacement. The trigger for MSH3 displacement appears to be inflammation and/or oxidative stress, and unlike MSI-H CRC patients, patients with MSI-L/EMAST CRCs show poor prognosis. These inflammatory-associated microsatellite alterations are a consequence of the local tumor microenvironment, and in theory, if the microenvironment is manipulated to lower inflammation, the microsatellite alterations and MSH3 dysfunction should be corrected. Here we describe the mechanisms and significance of inflammatory-associated microsatellite alterations, and

propose three areas to deeply explore the consequences and prevention of inflammation's effect upon the DNA MMR system.

Key words: Microsatellite instability; Microsatellite stable; Elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotide repeats; Colorectal cancer; Mismatch repair; Inflammation; *MSH3*

© **The Author(s) 2018.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Inflammation can trigger microsatellite stable colorectal cancers (CRCs) to acquire a nuclear-to-cytoplasm displacement of the DNA mismatch repair protein MSH3, rendering the CRC with di- and tetranucleotide microsatellite instability (MSI-low/elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotide repeats) and modifying the biological behavior of the CRC towards metastasis and poor patient survival. We herein discuss the mechanisms and significance of these induced inflammatory-associated microsatellite alterations, and suggest three content areas to further examine interventions that may modify the observed behavior of these CRCs.

Koi M, Tseng-Rogenski SS, Carethers JM. Inflammation-associated microsatellite alterations: Mechanisms and significance in the prognosis of patients with colorectal cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 1-14 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/1.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.1>

INTRODUCTION

The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) for colorectal cancers (CRCs) clarified that there are two types of sporadic CRCs - hypermutated and non-hypermutated. Most hypermutated CRCs have a defect in their mismatch repair (MMR) system due to the loss of MLH1 function by promoter silencing of the *MLH1* locus, resulting in high levels of insertion/deletion (I/D) mutations at microsatellite loci (microsatellite instability high: MSI-H)^[1]. Most MSI-H CRCs exhibit proximal location, mucinous, undifferentiated histology, abundant CD8⁺/Th1 T cell infiltrations, and less aggressive clinical behavior, and are susceptible for immune checkpoints blockade^[2,3]. Among non-hypermutated CRCs, I/D mutations in microsatellite loci with larger repeat units (di- and tetra-nucleotide repeats) are frequent and have been shown to be caused by tumor cells' exposure to inflammatory tumor-microenvironments^[4,5]. In this review, we describe and discuss the penetrance and causes of inflammation-associated microsatellite alterations (IAMAs), and their significance to patients' prognoses in CRC. We also raise "Provocative Questions" whose answers could contribute not only to

understand the biology of IAMAs but also to treatment of CRC with IAMAs.

MSI-H, MSI-L AND EMAS IN CRC

Microsatellites or simple sequence repeats are composed of 1-6 nucleotide repeats, occupy 3% of the total human genome, and are located in both coding and non-coding regions^[6]. MSI is defined as continuous length changes in simple DNA repeat sequences within microsatellite loci^[7]. MSI in CRC was first reported by Aaltonen *et al.*^[8] and Thibodeau *et al.*^[9] followed by Ionov *et al.*^[10] in 1993. It was then shown that a subset of sporadic CRC tumors and tumors from hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) exhibit MSI and MMR-defects^[11]. Subsequently, germline mutations in *MSH2*, *MLH1*, *PMS2* and *MSH6* were found in different HNPCC families^[12-18] and tumors from these families exhibited MSI^[19,20]. A causal relationship between MMR-defect, MSI and cancer susceptibility was shown by knockout mouse studies^[21-24]. Genetic complementation studies using tissue cultured MSI-positive CRC cells also confirmed that MSI is caused by MMR-deficiency in human cells^[25-27]. It was also shown that MSI exhibited in 10%-15% of sporadic CRC cases was due to transcriptional down-regulation of *MLH1* expression through promoter hyper-methylation^[28].

MSI in CRCs was defined at an international workshop meeting sponsored by the National Cancer Institute in 1998^[2]. A panel of five microsatellite markers - two markers with mononucleotide repeats and three markers with dinucleotide repeats - were validated to be classified as follows: High-frequency MSI (MSI-H: 2 or more of 5 markers show instability), low-frequency MSI (MSI-L: 1 of 5 markers shows instability), and microsatellite stable (MSS: none of 5 shows instability) CRCs. It was also confirmed that MSI-H in CRC is caused by defective MMR, mainly *MSH2* and *MLH1*, and manifests as sporadic and hereditary forms of CRCs. Both sporadic and inherited MSI-H CRCs have unique clinical and pathological features compared to MSI-L/MSS sporadic CRCs^[2]. At this NIH meeting, the presence of CRCs with MSI-L was appreciated and discussed. However, the etiology of MSI-L and the distinction between MSI-L and MSS CRC remained unclear. Another type of microsatellite alteration, called elevated microsatellite alterations in selected tetranucleotide repeats (EMAS), where insertion/deletion mutations in the loci with tri- and/or tetra-nucleotide but not with mono- and/or dinucleotide repeats was recognized as a component of CRC but its etiology and clinic-pathological significance was not determined^[2].

Although a consensus on the definition of MSI-L CRC was reached at the NCI meeting, two subsequent studies showed that approximately 80% of non-MSI-H CRC exhibited mutation at < 1 microsatellite locus when a large number of the loci with di-nucleotide repeats were tested for frame-shift mutations, indicating

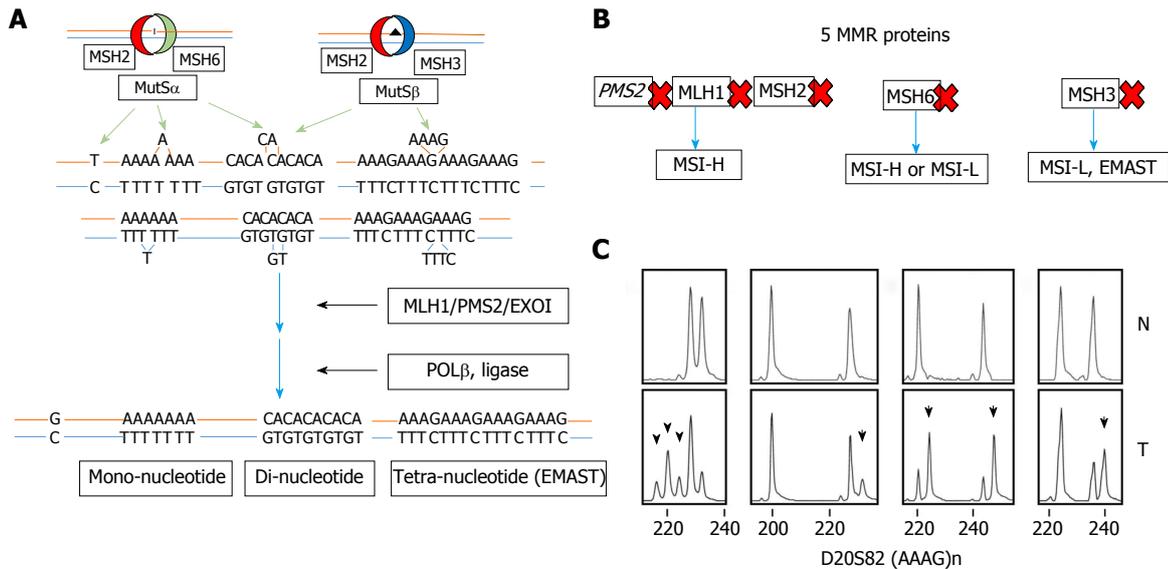


Figure 1 Human DNA mismatch repair. A: Two DNA recognition complexes MutS α , which recognizes insertion-deletion (I/D) loops of 1-2 repeated nucleotides for repair, and MutS β which recognizes I/D loops of 2 or greater nucleotides for repair, are the key protein complexes of MMR. The MLH1 and PMS2 complex, also known as MutL α , then helps execute the repair with the exonuclease Exo1, polymerase β and DNA ligase to fully effect repair; B: Specific efficiency in one of the five DNA MMR proteins yields differing microsatellite instability (MSI) results. Loss of MLH1, MSH2 or PMS2 will yield frameshifts at mono-, di- and tetra-nucleotide microsatellite markers. Loss of MSH6, inactivating MutS α only, will yield mononucleotide mostly but some dinucleotide microsatellite frameshifts, whereas loss of MSH3, inactivating MutS β , will yield di- and tetranucleotide microsatellite frameshifts, but no mononucleotide microsatellite frameshifts; C: Examples of fragment analysis comparing normal colon tissue (upper panels) with tissue (lower panels) demonstrating frameshifts in the tetranucleotide marker D20S82. MMR: Mismatch repair; MSI: Microsatellite instability; CRC: Colorectal cancer.

that most of CRC is MSI-L, and that the NCI reference panel was inadequate for detection of MSI-L CRC^[29,30]. These studies also showed that there were no genetic or clinic-pathological characteristics of tumors to separate MSI-L from MSS CRC. However, both studies observed that the incidence of MSI was non-randomly distributed among non-MSI-H CRC, suggesting that some tumors were more susceptible than others to slippage mutations at microsatellite loci, especially loci with dinucleotide repeats^[29,30]. The reason for the observed variation in instability and its pathological significance in patients' prognoses remained unclear.

I/D mutations in loci with selected tetra-nucleotide repeats (EMAST), such as (AAAG) $_n$ or (ATAG) $_n$, have been reported in non-CRCs including non-small cell lung, bladder, ovary, head and neck, skin and kidney cancers^[31]. Haugen *et al.*^[32] first described the frequency of EMAST in CRC, its relationship to MSI-L and its possible cause. They used the five NCI-endorsed MSI markers plus 2 additional markers with dinucleotide repeats to identify MSI-H, MSI-L and MSS CRC. They also used 7 EMAST markers and defined EMAST-positive if one or more of the 7 markers showed ID mutations^[32]. They found that EMAST is common in sporadic cases of non-MSI-H CRC (approximately 50%) and is associated with decreased nucleus MSH3 expression in tumor cells. Using MSH3-proficient and -deficient colon cancer cell lines, they also showed evidence that EMAST and low levels of instability at dinucleotide loci repeats - but not with mononucleotide repeats - in non-MSI-H CRC cells are caused by loss of MSH3^[32]. Frequent incidence of EMAST in CRCs was confirmed by 2 other studies^[33,34].

The genetic cause of EMAST due to the loss of MSH3 was also proven by other studies using tissue cultured human cells^[35,36].

BIOCHEMICAL BASIS OF MICROSATELLITE ALTERATIONS

Accumulated evidence supports that MSI-H, MSI-L and EMAST are caused by defects in some components of MMR^[37]. When DNA polymerase copies template DNA containing microsatellite loci, it mistakenly adds or deletes a repeat unit in the newly synthesized DNA strand (Figure 1A). The DNA polymerase slippage errors create loops between the two strands, which are recognized and repaired by MMR. *In vitro* experiments using cell extracts and/or purified proteins demonstrate that there are 5 MMR proteins involved in MMR reactions in human cells (Figure 1)^[38]. MSH2 plays a major role in recognition of mismatched DNA. MLH1 and PMS2 are the main proteins responsible for down-stream MMR reactions. If MSH2, MLH1 or PMS2 lose their function, slippage errors at microsatellite loci with mono-, di- and tetra-nucleotide repeats are not fixed at all, resulting in MSI-H (Figure 1B). There are 2 pathways for mismatch recognition: (1) MSH2 and MSH6 form a dimer called MutS α that preferentially recognizes mismatched nucleotides and loops containing 1-2 nucleotides; (2) MSH2 and MSH3 form a dimer called MutS β that recognizes loops containing 2 or more nucleotides generated at di- and tetra-nucleotide repeats, including the EMAST loci (Figure 1A)^[39]. Defects in MSH6 result in increased

Table 1 Expression of MSH3 protein within the epithelium of normal colonic mucosa and adenoma of patients with mono- or bi-allelic germline mutation in *MSH3*

Tissue (epithelium)	Monoallelic <i>MSH3</i> germline mutation	Bi-allelic <i>MSH3</i> germline mutation
Normal colonic mucosa	MSH3 expressed	MSH3 absent
Colon adenoma	Not obtained	MSH3 absent

Extracted from Adam *et al.*^[42].

missense mutations and in instability at mononucleotide repeats (Figure 1A)^[40]. When only MSH3 is disabled, increases in instability at di-, tri- and tetra-nucleotide repeats (EMAST) but not at mononucleotide repeats are observed (Figure 1)^[32]. Biochemical data indicates that loops containing 2 nucleotides are preferentially recognized by MutS β over MutS α ^[41]. Thus, when loss of MSH3 leaves many loops containing 2 or more nucleotides unrepaired, MutS α may repair some but not all such loops, resulting in low levels of mutation in di-nucleotide repeat loci and high levels of mutation in loci with tetra-nucleotide repeats (EMAST) loci (Figure 1B and C).

MSI-L AND EMAST ARE CAUSED BY MSH3 FUNCTIONAL LOSS IN CRC

The first evidence that loss of MSH3 may result in MSI-L and/or EMAST in CRC was reported by Haugen *et al.*^[32] in 2008. They used the colon cancer cell line HCT116 that is deficient in MLH1 due to a hemizygous inactivating mutation in exon 9, and is also deficient in MSH3 due to a homozygous frameshift inactivating mutation in exon 7. Thus, this cell line showed the MSI-H phenotype. Introduction of a normal human chromosome 3 carrying a wild-type *MLH1* to HCT116 complemented MLH1-deficiency^[25]. The resulting HCT116 with chromosome 3 exhibited stability in loci with mononucleotide repeats but showed low levels of instability at loci with dinucleotide repeats: MSI-L, and high degree of instability at EMAST loci. They further introduced a normal human chromosome 5 carrying wild-type MSH3 into HCT116 + 3 cells. The resulting HCT116 + 3 + 5 cells exhibited complete stability at loci with mono-, dinucleotide repeats and EMAST loci. Finally, they introduced MSH3-shRNA to HCT116 + 3 + 5 cells to knock-down MSH3 and showed that specific knock-down of MSH3 resulted in an MSI-L/EMAST phenotype.

The second evidence that loss of MSH3 results in MSI in loci with di- and tetra-but not mono-nucleotide repeats is from a discovery of two families with bi-allelic MSH3 germ-line mutations, reported by Adam *et al.*^[42]. Patients with bi-allelic inactivation mutations of the MSH3 locus suffered from a colorectal adenoma polyposis syndrome and early occurrence of multiple adenoma polyps and tumors in other organs. As expected, the expression of MSH3 was null in normal colon and adenoma polyps from these patients (Table 1). MSI assays showed that instability at di-nucleotide repeat loci and EMAST loci, but not loci with

mononucleotide repeats, was detected in adenoma polyps but not in normal colon cells from the same patient. This is because adenoma is monoclonal while the normal colon of these patients consists of mixture of cells with MSI at different loci, masking each alteration that occurred in individual colon cells with the exception of germline alleles. However, there is likely dinucleotide and tetranucleotide instability within normal tissues if they were compared to heterozygous *MSH3* germline relatives, or relatives that are homozygous normal for *MSH3* mutation. These results support that MSI-L/EMAST in sporadic CRC is caused by loss of MSH3 function.

EVIDENCE THAT MSI-L/EMAST IN SPORADIC CRC IS INDUCED BY INFLAMMATION THROUGH DISPLACEMENT OF MSH3 FROM NUCLEUS TO CYTOPLASM

While homogeneous loss of nuclear MSH3 can be detected in adenoma polyp with bi-allelic germline *MSH3* mutations, heterogeneous loss of nuclear MSH3 is frequently detected in sporadic CRC exhibiting MSI-L/EMAST (Figure 2A). These results suggest that local loss of MSH3 expression in sporadic MSI-L/EMAST CRC may be not due to genetic loss of MSH3. TCGA data shows that the frequency of *MSH3* somatic mutations in CRC is about 6.6%. This does not explain the high incidence of MSI-L/EMAST (approximately 50%) in CRC. Furthermore, most *MSH3* mutations are frameshift mutations in exon 7 that are a resulting target from *MLH1* inactivation in sporadic CRC (Table 2)^[1].

Lee *et al.*^[34] found that EMAST CRC is enriched in in the tumor microenvironment of CD8⁺ T cells compared to non-EMAST CRC, suggesting that some immunological and inflammatory responses are active in EMAST CRC. They also found that EMAST is significantly high in ulcerated tumors. Devaraj *et al.*^[43] further showed that EMAST-positive rectal tumors are associated with the presence of chronic inflammation. These observations led them to hypothesize that inflammation may somehow affect MSH3 function that induces MSI-L/EMAST.

Tseng-Rogenski *et al.*^[4,36] demonstrated that several main inflammatory factors, including oxidative stress (hydrogen peroxide), interleukin 6 (IL6) and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) induce displacement of MSH3 from the nucleus to the cytoplasm in several

Table 2 Comparison of type of mismatch repair gene mutations between sporadic hypermethylated *MLH1* colorectal cancers and *POLE* mutation colorectal cancers from TCGA

<i>MLH1</i> promoter hypermethylation	22/35 (63%) of hypermutated CRCs	8/22 (36%) with MSH3 frameshift mutation 1/22 (4.5%) with MSH3 missense/nonsense mutation 0/22 (0%) with MSH2 mutation 5/22 (23%) with MSH6 frameshift mutation 4/22 (18%) with MSH6 missense/nonsense mutation
<i>POLE</i> mutation	13/35 (37%) of hypermutated CRCs	3/13 (23%) with MSH3 frameshift mutation 2/13 (15%) with MSH3 missense/nonsense mutation 5/13 (38%) with MSH2 missense/nonsense mutation 0/13 (0%) with MSH6 frameshift mutation 7/13 (54%) with MSH6 missense/nonsense mutation

Both types of CRCs are hypermutated, containing hundreds of somatic mutations in genomic DNA. Note that the *MLH1* hypermethylated CRCs demonstrate higher frequency and consistent frameshift mutations in *MSH3* and *MSH6* as compared to *POLE* mutated CRCs, which contain some frameshifts but higher frequency of missense/nonsense mutations in *MSH3*, *MSH2* and *MSH6*. Extracted from: Cancer Genome Atlas Network. Comprehensive molecular characterization of human colon and rectal cancer. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 333-337. CRCs: Colorectal cancers.

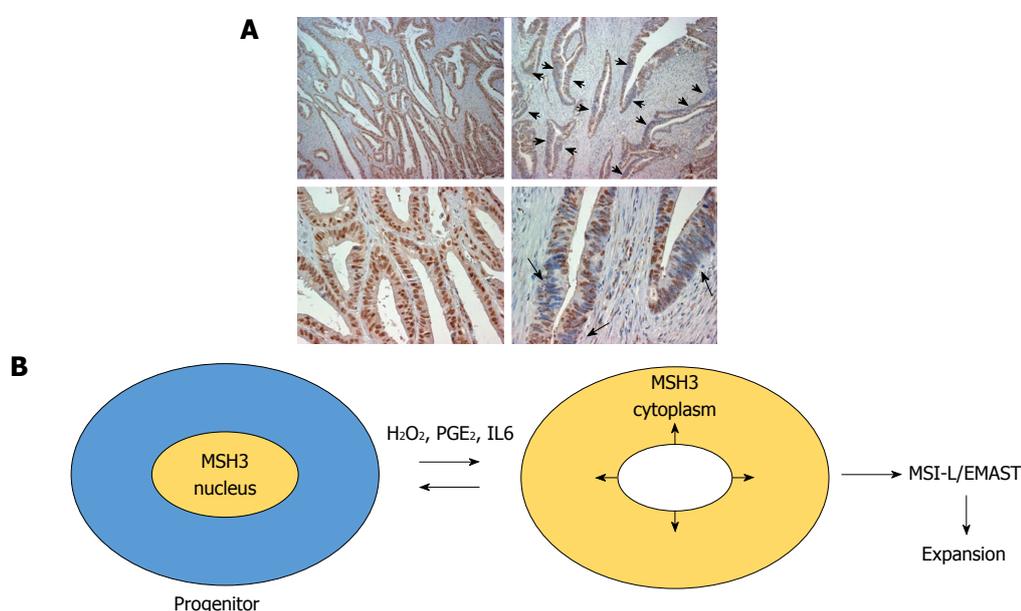


Figure 2 MSH3 expression in sporadic colorectal cancer. A: Immunohistochemistry for MSH3 in sporadic CRC. Arrows show heterogeneous expression of MSH3 in cells and within nuclei in the epithelium; B: Model of MSH3 displacement from the nucleus to the cytosol with inflammatory stimuli to allow accumulation of tetranucleotide frameshift mutations. Progenitor cells could be affected earlier such that subsequent daughter cells amplify the accumulated frameshift mutations. MSI: Microsatellite instability; CRC: Colorectal cancer; EMAST: Elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotide repeats.

cancer cell lines. Importantly, other MMR proteins including *MLH1*, *MSH2* and *MSH6* do not move from the nucleus to the cytoplasm in response to these stimuli. Repeated treatment of several microsatellite stable colon cancer cell lines with IL6 induced microsatellite instability at EMAST loci. However, other inflammatory cytokines including *TNF α* , *IFN α* , *IFN β* , and *IL1 β* did not have such an effect. Tseng-Rogenski *et al.*^[41] also showed that phosphorylation of *STAT3* may be required for displacement of *MSH3* when induced by IL6. These studies convincingly show that not all, but some, inflammatory factors induce EMAST through loss of *MSH3* from the nucleus (Figure 2B).

Evidence that an inflammatory micro-environment induces MSI-L (low levels of MSI at the loci with dinucleotide repeats) has been shown in regenerated colon tissues from ulcerated colitis (UC) patients. The

first study, reported by Brentnall *et al.*^[44], showed for the first time the presence of MSI-L but not MSI-H in colon tissues from UC patients. The second study, by Ozaki *et al.*^[45], isolated crypts from UC-derived CRC, UC-derived hyperplasia and UC-regenerated colons through laser micro-capture and tested for the presence of microsatellite instability in DNA. Ozaki *et al.*^[45] detected MSI-L but not MSI-H in some crypts but not in others, regardless of whether they were from cancer or non-cancer tissues. They also showed that MSI was not detected from stroma cells from these UC patients. Each crypt showed a different MSI-profile, indicating that MSI-L occurs independently at the crypt level. Our recent study showed that regenerated colon cells and CRCs from UC patients have a high frequency of *MSH3* displacement from the nucleus to the cytoplasm, and demonstrate MSI-L/EMAST^[46].

These results further support the role of inflammation in displacement of MSH3-induced MSI-L/EMAST in human tissues including cancers.

PROGNOSTIC VALUE OF MSI-L/EMAST IN CRC

Several studies have examined the impact of MSI-L and/or EMAST genotypes on patient prognoses in CRC. There have been 4 studies evaluating the prognosis values of MSI-L^[47-50]. Kohonen-Corish *et al.*^[47] showed that patients with stage C colon cancers defined as MSI-L by the NCI panel plus one tetra-nucleotide marker (*MYCL1*) showed poor overall survival (OS) compared to patients with MSI-H and/or MSS colon cancers. Similar results were obtained by Wright *et al.*^[48]. They showed that stage C CRC patients that are positive for MSI-L as defined by the NCI panel, plus an additional 2 markers with mono-nucleotide repeats, 3 with di-nucleotide repeats and the tetra-nucleotide *MYCL1* marker, exhibited poor cancer-specific survival compared to MSS CRC patients^[48]. They also observed that most MSI-L CRC exhibited MSI at one di- or tetra-nucleotide but not at mono-nucleotide repeat markers^[48]. Lee *et al.*^[49] examined 3019 CRC cases for MSI using an NCI microsatellite marker panel and evaluated prognoses of those patients. Similar to other studies, they showed that most MSI-L CRC exhibited MSI at dinucleotide repeats, and patients with MSI-L CRCs was associated with poor OS by Cox regression analysis^[49]. Although the previous 2 studies suggested that MSI-L may have a significant prognostic value for stage C CRC patients, Lee *et al.*^[49] did not examine the prognostic significance of MSI-L for cancer-specific survival in their large cohort. In contrast to the above three studies, Azzoni *et al.*^[50] reported that MSI-L is associated with improved patient survival as compared to MSS CRC. However, the percentage of MSI-H cases in their cohort was unusually high (37%: 68 of 184 cases) compared to other studies (10%-15%), suggesting the presence of some bias in the studied cohort. Lastly, a study reported by Garcia *et al.*^[51] did not find any association between MSI-L and disease-free survival (DFS) or OS in stage II and III CRC cohorts.

There are 2 studies examining the relationship between EMAST and OS in CRC; they found no association between the two^[33,51]. However, when both MSI-L and EMAST cases were combined, Garcia *et al.*^[51] found that MSI-L/EMAST was associated with shorter DFS but not OS compared with non-MSI-L/EMAST CRC. In their cohort, MSI-H CRC patients exhibited the highest survival. Thus, the MSI-L/EMAST genotype in CRC may be associated with recurrence and/or metastasis after surgery. There appears to be heterogeneity even among MSI-L/EMAST CRC patients^[52,53]. One group of MSI-L/EMAST CRC exhibited loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at chromosome 9p24.2. and the other did not exhibit 9p24.2 LOH. When the prognoses of these two groups were compared, the one with 9p24.2 LOH at stage

III showed improved survival after surgery and OS in Kaplan-Meier analysis and in multi variate analysis over the one without 9p24.2. LOH at stage III^[53]. The results also showed that MSI-L/EMAST/9p24.2 LOH is an independent factor that predicts improved OS in stage II/III CRC. Thus, MSI-L/EMAST may be associated with recurrence, but additional genetic or epigenetic changes may modify the behavior of recurrent tumors^[53]. Overall, the data presented so far suggest that MSI-L and/or EMAST could be a biomarker for DFS and/or OS of stage II and/or III CRC. However, additional studies using a population-based large cohort are needed to confirm the prognostic value of MSI-L and EMAST.

One concern regarding EMAST is that various studies have not reached a full consensus on the definition of EMAST. As described above, current evidence supports the idea that MSI-L and EMAST in sporadic CRC share the same etiology: both are induced by the absence of nuclear MSH3 in response to exogenous inflammatory factors such as IL6, and oxidative stress^[4]. Based on these observations, we propose that EMAST cancer is a non-MSI-H cancer, and MSI at EMAST markers is not caused by loss of other MMR proteins including MLH1, MSH2, PMS2^[51,53]. The next question should be whether or not non-EMAST CRC really exists. Similar to MSI-L in CRC^[29,30], almost all CRC could be EMAST-positive if a large number of EMAST markers are used. A recent study by Cortes-Ciriano *et al.*^[54] showed that all non-MSI-H cancers contain various levels of frame-shift mutations in microsatellite loci with mono-, di-, tri- and tetra-nucleotide repeats. Considering that all tumor tissues contain some degree of inflammatory elements, many of those mutations could be induced by the loss of MSH3 triggered by inflammation in the tumor-microenvironment. Furthermore, a study for UC suggested that frequent exposure to inflammation increased the incidence of MSI-L and EMAST^[46]. Thus, while the purpose of the MSI assay is primarily to detect MMR-deficient CRC, the purpose of an EMAST assay could be to distinguish CRCs whose precursors were exposed to high levels of inflammation to CRCs whose precursors were exposed to lower levels of inflammation. Therefore, the results of the studies by Kohonen-Corish, Wright, Lee and Garcia could be re-interpreted according to the idea that high levels of inflammatory tumor-microenvironments not only induce MSI-L/EMAST in cancer cells at the primary site but also include some property that promotes recurrence and/or metastasis when they disseminate. Additional studies will be required to determine whether the numbers and kinds of EMAST markers and cut-off levels for determining EMAST-positive/negative used so far are adequate to distinguish CRCs with different prognoses^[31].

PROVOCATIVE QUESTIONS

Here, we have raised three questions whose answers can be important for not only clinical but also basic

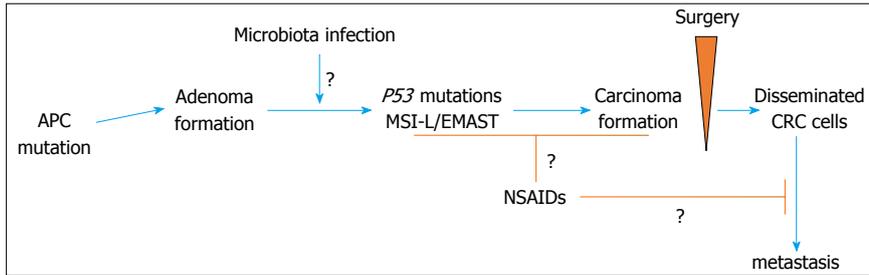


Figure 3 Model of adenoma-to-carcinoma formation in the human colon, with actual and potential sites of interventions to improve survival. MSI: Microsatellite instability; CRC: Colorectal cancer; EMAS: Elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotide repeats.

aspects of MSI-L/EMAST in CRC (Figure 3).

Question 1: Does treatment of CRC with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs reduce not only recurrence/metastasis but also the incidence of MSI-L/EMAST?

The idea that inflammation is associated with recurrence and/or metastasis is indirectly supported by observations that an intake of the anti-inflammatory drug, aspirin, may not only prevent adenomas^[55] and CRC formations^[56], but also prevent recurrence and metastasis of CRC following surgery^[57]. Other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID) including celecoxib and rofecoxib, specific inhibitors of cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2), have been shown to reduce the incidence of adenomas^[58-60]. But it was also found that COX-2 inhibitors suppressed colorectal tumor growth and metastasis in mouse models^[61,62]. Furthermore, Chan *et al.*^[63] reported that the regular intake of aspirin after curative surgery reduced cancer-specific mortality in a sub-group of CRC cells expressing a high level of COX-2 protein. In addition, CRCs expressing HLA class I compared to those not expressing HLA class I are susceptible for aspirin treatment after diagnosis^[64]. Also, CRCs with *PIK3CA* mutations responded better to aspirin treatment after diagnosis than did CRCs with wild-type *PIK3CA*^[65]. However, a recent study by Gray *et al.*^[66] showed that the efficacy of aspirin on cancer-specific survival, and OS was associated with levels of COX-2 expression but not with mutational status of *PIK3CA* in CRCs. Ng *et al.*^[67] showed that aspirin and COX-2 inhibitors improved recurrence-free survival, DFS and OS of stage III CRC patients who either received fluorouracil (FU) plus leucovorin (LV) or FU plus LV with irinotecan. These studies support the idea that NSAIDs can be used as part of adjuvant therapy for stage I - III CRC, however, the efficacy of NSAIDs on the recurrence/metastasis of CRC are still under investigation through several randomized controlled trials^[57].

Ma *et al.*^[68] showed that PGE2 and its receptor, the prostaglandin E receptor 2 (EP2), are necessary for colon cancer formation in inflammatory tissue environments. Compared to wild-type mice treated with azoxymethan (AOM) followed by dextran sodium sulfate (DSS), AOM/DSS-treated EP2-knockout and prostaglandin E synthase (*Ptges*)-knockout mice bore a significantly reduced number of colon tumors.

They identified neutrophil, probably myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC), and cancer-associated fibroblast (CAF) as the main cell components recruited in tumor-microenvironments, expressing EP2, responding to PGE2, and contributing to tumor formation. These cells form a positive-feedback loop of COX-2-PGE2-EP2-NF- κ B-COX-2 cycles, and produce TNF- α and IL6^[68]. The presence of MDSC and CAF in the tumor-microenvironment are also significantly associated with stage progression and a poor prognosis for CRC, while activation of Th1 helper and cytotoxic memory T cells play a key role in anti-tumor activities preventing recurrence and/or metastasis in CRC^[69,70]. Interestingly, Zelenay *et al.*^[71] showed that, depending on the level of COX-activity in cancer, the immunological landscape of tumor-microenvironments can be switched between anti-tumor and inflammatory pro-tumor. Therefore, the level of PGE2 and of COX-2 may be major factors in controlling immunological responses to cancer cells, and thereby a patient's prognosis. Regarding the relationship between MSI-L/EMAST and PGE2, we have observed that the exposure of colon cancer cells in tissue cultures to PGE2 triggers movement of MSH3 from the nucleus to the cytoplasm, which may induce MSI-L/EMAST. Therefore, it is reasonable to speculate that MSI-L/EMAST in CRC may be associated with high levels of COX-2 expression in cancer cells and/or in tumor-microenvironments. This could be the reason why patients with MSI-L/EMAST CRCs exhibit a shorter RFS^[51,53]. Thus, reduction of PGE2 by NSAIDs may reduce the incidence and recurrence/metastasis of MSI-EMAST. If this is the case, MSI-L/EMAST could be a biomarker for susceptibility to the NSAIDs treatment.

Question 2: Do microbiota play a role in MSI-L/EMAST formation, adenoma/carcinoma transition and recurrence/metastasis?

Lee *et al.*^[34] discovered that EMAS is less frequent in colorectal adenomas and well-differentiated adenocarcinomas than in moderately differentiated and poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas, suggesting that EMAS is progressively acquired during the histological adenoma-carcinoma sequence, from adenoma to well-differentiated carcinomas to moderately and poorly differentiated carcinomas. Because a key gene alteration responsible for adenoma-carcinoma sequence

in CRC is *p53* mutation^[72], MSI-L/EMAST formation may be associated with *p53* mutation. In fact, Ahrendt *et al.*^[73] reported that EMAST is associated with *p53* mutations in non-small cell lung cancer. Li *et al.*^[74] observed an association between LOH at *TP53* and EMAST in CRC. Interestingly, *p53* mutations are the most frequently found in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)-associated CRC among other gene mutations (60%-90%)^[75,76]. One half of the *p53* mutations are C:G>T:G transitions, thought to be caused by nitric oxide exposure due to increased inducible nitric oxide synthase expression in IBD^[75]. Our preliminary data showed that IBD-associated CRC exhibit a higher frequency of MSI-L/EMAST than do sporadic CRC (unpublished data). Taken together, these results suggest that the inflammatory tissue environment may enhance *p53* mutations and MSI-L/EMAST formation in sporadic adenomas, leading to carcinoma transition. As mentioned earlier, MSI-L/EMAST in stage II CRC patients is associated with shorter RFS, suggesting that the inflammatory tumor-environment in primary tumor tissues somehow promotes recurrence or metastasis. These observations lead to the next question: What establishes an inflammatory environment in colorectal adenoma and carcinoma?

Microbiota in the colon and rectum create an inflammatory microenvironment and promote CRC formation^[77]. Several bacterial organisms including *Fusobacterium nucleatum* (*F. nucleatum*), Enterotoxigenic *Bacteroides fragilis* (*ETBF*), and colibactin-producing *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) are epidemiologically associated with CRC, and have been found to be enriched in CRC^[77,78]. The enrichment of *F. nucleatum* was also found in colorectal adenoma relative to non-adenoma or surrounding tissues^[79-81]. McCoy *et al.*^[79] showed that *F. nucleatum* abundance in colorectal adenoma is associated with local inflammatory cytokine gene expression including IL-10 and TNF- α . Kostic *et al.*^[80] investigated the effect of *F. nucleatum* infection on the development of intestinal tumors in *APC*^{Min/+}, IL10^{-/-} and T-bet^{-/-} X Rag2^{-/-} mice. There was an increase in the number of tumors in *APC*^{Min/+} mice. Importantly, infection with *F. nucleatum* accelerated adenocarcinoma formation in the small intestines of *APC*^{Min/+} mice compared to sham-treated control mice. In contrast, infection with *F. nucleatum* did not induce any tumor formation in IL10^{-/-} and T-bet^{-/-} X Rag2^{-/-} mice. These results suggest that the effects of *F. nucleatum* may manifest on existing adenomas, and may stimulate adenoma-carcinoma transition by creating an oxidative stress-rich, carcinogenic environment^[80]. It would be interesting to determine whether *F. nucleatum* -induced adenocarcinomas in *APC*^{Min/+} mice gain *p53* mutations. Kostic *et al.*^[80] further showed that infection of tumor tissues with *F. nucleatum* results in recruitment of MDSCs, tumor-associated macrophages, and dendritic cells in tumor tissues, and modulate the tumor immune micro-environment that promote tumor progression. In

addition, they found the up-regulation of genes that are down-stream of NF- κ B including *PTGS2* (*COX-2*), *IL6*, *IL1 β* , and *TNF* in both human and mouse CRC infected with *F. nucleatum*^[80]. It is tempting to speculate that *F. nucleatum*-induced adenocarcinoma may gain MSI-L/EMAST in response to oxidative stress, PEG2 and/or IL6 that cause displacement of MSH3 from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. Recently, a heavy load of *F. nucleatum* has been associated with MSI-H CRC, proximal colon cancer and a poor prognosis^[81-84]. Yu *et al.*^[85] showed that *F. nucleatum* infection in primary CRC is associated with recurrence after surgery followed by adjuvant chemotherapy. They showed that *F. nucleatum* induces chemoresistance in infected cells through autophagy^[85]. One of the reasons why 5-FU-based adjuvant therapy does not have benefit for a sub-group of MSI-H CRC^[86,87] could be partly explained by the infection of *F. nucleatum*^[85]. It is also possible that the CpG Island Methylator Phenotype (CIMP) including promoter methylation of the *MLH1* locus could be induced by chronic inflammation due to a heavy load of *F. nucleatum* infection^[82]. Considering that infection of *F. nucleatum* is associated with recurrence of CRC after surgery, a group of such CRCs may exhibit MSI-L/EMAST CRC^[51,53].

Another bacterium, *ETBF*, is also associated with CRC^[88-90] and can target colorectal cells to promote an adenoma and/or adenoma-carcinoma transition in *APC*^{Min/+} mice^[91]. *ETBF* produces a metalloprotease toxin called BFT. BFT binds to the surface of colorectal epithelial cells and induces E-cadherin cleavage, resulting in an increase in barrier permeability and inducing an inflammatory micro-environment with Th-17/IL-17 predominance^[91,92]. Th-17/IL-17 plays a major role in *ETBF* tumorigenesis because the depletion of CD4⁺ T cells and blockade of IL-17 inhibited it. IL-17 attracts neutrophils, MDSCs and macrophages, and induces carcinogenic and immunosuppressive factors including nitric oxide, ROS, and Arg1 in mouse models^[92]. Colibactin-producing *E. coli* is also associated with CRC^[93,94] and initiates inflammation and promotes adenoma formation in *APC*^{Min/+} mice^[94] and in *APC*^{Min/+}, IL10^{-/-} mice^[95]. Taken together, infection with all three bacterial organisms, that are found to be associated with CRC, induces an inflammatory environment in adenoma tissue and promotes adenoma and/or a transition from adenoma to carcinoma in mouse models. It would be interesting to determine whether MSI-L/EMAST and *p53* mutations coincide with bacterial-induced transitions to adenoma/carcinoma. Recently, Scott *et al.*^[96] showed that the efficacy of 5-FU treatment maybe largely influenced by microbiota in the gut.

Question 3: Is MSH3 a component of DNA damage signaling?

The MutS β hetero-duplex between MSH3 and MSH2 not only functions in MMR but may also play a role

in double strand break (DSB) repair *via* homologous recombination (HR)^[97-100]. DNA double strand breaks (DSB) induce cell death if not repaired. Cells have evolved two pathways to re-connect the broken DNA ends: Non-homologous end joining (NHEJ) and homologous recombination (HR). If one of these pathways is disabled when DSB is created, cells use the other pathway for survival. The HR reaction starts with a nuclease-mediated resection of broken DNA ends to be coated by the single stranded (ss) DNA-binding protein, replication protein A (RPA). Then, Ataxia telangiectasia and Rad3-related (ATR) kinase is recruited to the RPA-coated ssDNA *via* an ATR-interacting partner (ATRIP). The topoisomerase II β -binding protein 1 (TOPBP1), which is recruited to the DSB site, interacts with ATRIP and activates ATR. Activated ATR phosphorylates CHEK2 that regulate cell cycle progression. TOPBP1 also interacts with polo-like kinase (PLK) that phosphorylate RAD51 for its loading on resected ssDNA^[101]. Burdova *et al.*^[99] showed that recruitment of ATR/ATRIP to RPA-coated ssDNA is mediated by MutS β which binds to the loop structure formed within the ssDNA. Therefore, MutS β is required in the early stage of HR-DSB repair and its loss due to an MSH2 or MSH3 defect forces a cell to use NHEJ for survival under the presence of DSBs^[98,100]. Thus, when oxidative stress causes DSBs, it may induce elimination of MSH3 from the nucleus, resulting in activation of Ataxia-telangiectasia mutated (ATM)^[102] but not ATR, and dependence of NHEJ for survival.

An intriguing question is why and how nuclear MSH3 proteins translocate in response to oxidative stress or exposure to IL6 or PGE2 (Figure 2B)^[4,36]. H₂O₂ and oxidative stress causes DSBs, resulting in activation of NF- κ B^[103,104]. IL6 and PGE2 are mediators that possibly form a loop associated with activation of NF- κ B through STAT3^[105-107]. IL6 activates STAT3, which directly interacts with the NF- κ B family member RELA, contributing to constitutive NF- κ B activation^[105], and COX2/PGE2 also activates STAT3, leading to NF- κ B activation^[106]. We found that MSH3 itself is a shuttling protein. It contains a bona fide bipartite nuclear localization signal (NLS) that directs its nuclear import to perform DNA repair (unpublished data). It also contains two functional nuclear export signals (NESs) that allow it to exit the nucleus upon the treatment of a pro-inflammatory cytokine, IL-6 (unpublished data). Among the other main MMR proteins including MSH2, MSH3 is the only MMR protein that shifts into the cytoplasm upon oxidative stress or IL6 treatment, suggesting that MSH3 moves alone or does so with other unknown partner proteins. Recent data indicate that the NF- κ B Essential Modulator (NEMO), when used as a bait, can pull down MSH3, suggesting physical interaction between these two proteins^[108]. As one of the three components of the IKK complex, NEMO's role in regulating the NF- κ B pathway is well documented^[104]. It is possible that simultaneous or sequential movement of MSH3, NEMO and ATM in

the cell may transmit a DNA damage signal to NF- κ B, depending on the degree of DNA damage. Further studies are necessary to clarify these possibilities.

MSI-L/EMAST IS COMMON IN HUMAN CANCERS

Since the discovery of MSI in CRC, MSI-L and EMAST have been examined in cancers from other organs and tissues. MSI-L has been found in stomach^[109], cervical^[110], pancreatic^[111], ovarian^[112], skin^[113], nerve^[114], breast, endometrial^[115], liver^[116], esophageal^[117], eye^[118], soft tissue^[119], gallbladder^[120], head and neck^[121], prostate^[122], lung^[123] and cancers of the urinary tract^[124]. EMAST has also been widely detected in other various human cancers^[31]. A recent study by Cortes-Ciriano *et al.*^[54] showed that there are MSI-H prone cancers including colorectal, esophageal, stomach and endometrial cancers, and non-MSI-H prone cancers that include ovarian, kidney, liver, breast, head and neck, cervical, lung, pancreatic, bladder, prostate, skin, adrenal, cortical and thyroid cancers. They also showed that most non-MSI-H cancers exhibit different degrees of MSI at not only loci with mono- but also loci with di-, tri- and tetra-nucleotide repeats, suggesting that inflammation-induced MSH3 replacement from the nucleus to the cytoplasm is probably common in human cancers^[54,125,126]. Thus, the answers to the provocative questions raised above may also apply to many human cancers.

CONCLUSION

MSI-L/EMAST is common in human cancers. MSI-L/EMAST is caused by displacement of MSH3 from the nucleus to the cytoplasm in replicating cells triggered by inflammatory stimuli, and can be termed Inflammatory-Associated Microsatellite Alterations (IAMAs). MSI-L/EMAST is associated with recurrence and/or metastasis in CRC patients. MSI-L/EMAST CRC is a heterogeneous group and consists of sub-groups with different genetic changes and prognoses.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Cancer Genome Atlas Network.** Comprehensive molecular characterization of human colon and rectal cancer. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 330-337 [PMID: 22810696 DOI: 10.1038/nature11252]
- 2 **Boland CR,** Thibodeau SN, Hamilton SR, Sidransky D, Eshleman JR, Burt RW, Meltzer SJ, Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Fodde R, Ranzani GN, Srivastava S. A National Cancer Institute Workshop on Microsatellite Instability for cancer detection and familial predisposition: development of international criteria for the determination of microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 5248-5257 [PMID: 9823339]
- 3 **Overman MJ,** Kopetz S, Lonardi S, McDermott R, Leone F, Leach J, Lenz H, Hendlish A, Morse M, Garcia-Alfonso P, Desai J, Hill A, Moss RA, Goldberg MV, Lin C, Tang H, Andre T. Nivolumab \pm ipilimumab in treatment (tx) of patients (pts) with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) with and without high microsatellite instability (MSI-H): CheckMate-142 interim results. *J Clin Oncol*

- 2016; **34**: 3501
- 4 **Tseng-Rogenski SS**, Hamaya Y, Choi DY, Carethers JM. Interleukin 6 alters localization of hMSH3, leading to DNA mismatch repair defects in colorectal cancer cells. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 579-589 [PMID: 25461668 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.11.027]
 - 5 **Carethers JM**. Microsatellite Instability Pathway and EMAST in Colorectal Cancer. *Curr Colorectal Cancer Rep* 2017; **13**: 73-80 [PMID: 28367107 DOI: 10.1007/s11888-017-0352-y]
 - 6 **Subramanian S**, Madgula VM, George R, Mishra RK, Pandit MW, Kumar CS, Singh L. Triplet repeats in human genome: distribution and their association with genes and other genomic regions. *Bioinformatics* 2003; **19**: 549-552 [PMID: 12651711 DOI: 10.1186/gb-2003-4-2-r13]
 - 7 **Lengauer C**, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B. Genetic instabilities in human cancers. *Nature* 1998; **396**: 643-649 [PMID: 9872311 DOI: 10.1038/25292]
 - 8 **Aaltonen LA**, Peltomäki P, Leach FS, Sistonen P, Pylkkänen L, Mecklin JP, Järvinen H, Powell SM, Jen J, Hamilton SR. Clues to the pathogenesis of familial colorectal cancer. *Science* 1993; **260**: 812-816 [PMID: 8484121 DOI: 10.1126/science.8484121]
 - 9 **Thibodeau SN**, Bren G, Schaid D. Microsatellite instability in cancer of the proximal colon. *Science* 1993; **260**: 816-819 [PMID: 8484122 DOI: 10.1126/science.8484122]
 - 10 **Ionov Y**, Peinado MA, Malkhosyan S, Shibata D, Perucho M. Ubiquitous somatic mutations in simple repeated sequences reveal a new mechanism for clonic carcinogenesis. *Nature* 1993; **363**: 558-561 [PMID: 8505985 DOI: 10.1038/363558a0]
 - 11 **Parsons R**, Li GM, Longley MJ, Fang WH, Papadopoulos N, Jen J, de la Chapelle A, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Modrich P. Hypermutability and mismatch repair deficiency in RER+ tumor cells. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 1227-1236 [PMID: 8261516 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90331-J]
 - 12 **Fishel R**, Lescoe MK, Rao MR, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Garber J, Kane M, Kolodner R. The human mutator gene homolog MSH2 and its association with hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. *Cell* 1994; **77**: 1 p following 166 [PMID: 8156592 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90546-3]
 - 13 **Leach FS**, Nicolaides NC, Papadopoulos N, Liu B, Jen J, Parsons R, Peltomäki P, Sistonen P, Aaltonen LA, Nyström-Lahti M. Mutations of a mutS homolog in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 1215-1225 [PMID: 8261515 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90330-S]
 - 14 **Bronner CE**, Baker SM, Morrison PT, Warren G, Smith LG, Lescoe MK, Kane M, Earabino C, Lipford J, Lindblom A. Mutation in the DNA mismatch repair gene homologue hMLH1 is associated with hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer. *Nature* 1994; **368**: 258-261 [PMID: 8145827 DOI: 10.1038/368258a0]
 - 15 **Papadopoulos N**, Nicolaides NC, Wei YF, Ruben SM, Carter KC, Rosen CA, Haseltine WA, Fleischmann RD, Fraser CM, Adams MD. Mutation of a mutL homolog in hereditary colon cancer. *Science* 1994; **263**: 1625-1629 [PMID: 8128251 DOI: 10.1126/science.8128251]
 - 16 **Nicolaides NC**, Papadopoulos N, Liu B, Wei YF, Carter KC, Ruben SM, Rosen CA, Haseltine WA, Fleischmann RD, Fraser CM. Mutations of two PMS homologues in hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. *Nature* 1994; **371**: 75-80 [PMID: 8072530 DOI: 10.1038/371075a0]
 - 17 **Palombo F**, Gallinari P, Iaccarino I, Lettieri T, Hughes M, D'Arrigo A, Truong O, Hsuan JJ, Jiricny J. GTBP, a 160-kilodalton protein essential for mismatch-binding activity in human cells. *Science* 1995; **268**: 1912-1914 [PMID: 7604265 DOI: 10.1126/science.7604265]
 - 18 **Miyaki M**, Konishi M, Tanaka K, Kikuchi-Yanoshita R, Muraoka M, Yasuno M, Igari T, Koike M, Chiba M, Mori T. Germline mutation of MSH6 as the cause of hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. *Nat Genet* 1997; **17**: 271-272 [PMID: 9354786 DOI: 10.1038/ng1197-271]
 - 19 **Eshleman JR**, Markowitz SD. Microsatellite instability in inherited and sporadic neoplasms. *Curr Opin Oncol* 1995; **7**: 83-89 [PMID: 7696368 DOI: 10.1097/00001622-199507010-00013]
 - 20 **Kolodner RD**, Tytell JD, Schmeits JL, Kane MF, Gupta RD, Weger J, Wahlberg S, Fox EA, Peel D, Ziogas A, Garber JE, Syngal S, Anton-Culver H, Li FP. Germ-line msh6 mutations in colorectal cancer families. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 5068-5074 [PMID: 10537275]
 - 21 **de Wind N**, Dekker M, Berns A, Radman M, te Riele H. Inactivation of the mouse Msh2 gene results in mismatch repair deficiency, methylation tolerance, hyperrecombination, and predisposition to cancer. *Cell* 1995; **82**: 321-330 [PMID: 7628020 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(95)90319-4]
 - 22 **Reitmair AH**, Schmits R, Ewel A, Bapat B, Redston M, Mitri A, Waterhouse P, Mittrücker HW, Wakeham A, Liu B. MSH2 deficient mice are viable and susceptible to lymphoid tumours. *Nat Genet* 1995; **11**: 64-70 [PMID: 7550317 DOI: 10.1038/ng0995-64]
 - 23 **Baker SM**, Bronner CE, Zhang L, Plug AW, Robatzek M, Warren G, Elliott EA, Yu J, Ashley T, Arnheim N, Flavell RA, Liskay RM. Male mice defective in the DNA mismatch repair gene PMS2 exhibit abnormal chromosome synapsis in meiosis. *Cell* 1995; **82**: 309-319 [PMID: 7628019 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(95)90318-6]
 - 24 **Edelmann W**, Yang K, Umar A, Heyer J, Lau K, Fan K, Liedtke W, Cohen PE, Kane MF, Lipford JR, Yu N, Crouse GF, Pollard JW, Kunkel T, Lipkin M, Kolodner R, Kucherlapati R. Mutation in the mismatch repair gene Msh6 causes cancer susceptibility. *Cell* 1997; **91**: 467-477 [PMID: 9390556 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80433-X]
 - 25 **Koi M**, Umar A, Chauhan DP, Cherian SP, Carethers JM, Kunkel TA, Boland CR. Human chromosome 3 corrects mismatch repair deficiency and microsatellite instability and reduces N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine tolerance in colon tumor cells with homozygous hMLH1 mutation. *Cancer Res* 1994; **54**: 4308-4312 [PMID: 8044777]
 - 26 **Umar A**, Koi M, Risinger JI, Glaab WE, Tindall KR, Kolodner RD, Boland CR, Barrett JC, Kunkel TA. Correction of hypermutability, N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine resistance, and defective DNA mismatch repair by introducing chromosome 2 into human tumor cells with mutations in MSH2 and MSH6. *Cancer Res* 1997; **57**: 3949-3955 [PMID: 9307278]
 - 27 **Watanabe Y**, Haugen-Strano A, Umar A, Yamada K, Hemmi H, Kikuchi Y, Takano S, Shibata Y, Barrett JC, Kunkel TA, Koi M. Complementation of an hMSH2 defect in human colorectal carcinoma cells by human chromosome 2 transfer. *Mol Carcinog* 2000; **29**: 37-49 [PMID: 11020245 DOI: 10.1002/1098-2744(200009)29:13.0.CO;2-2]
 - 28 **Herman JG**, Umar A, Polyak K, Graff JR, Ahuja N, Issa JP, Markowitz S, Willson JK, Hamilton SR, Kinzler KW, Kane MF, Kolodner RD, Vogelstein B, Kunkel TA, Baylin SB. Incidence and functional consequences of hMLH1 promoter hypermethylation in colorectal carcinoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998; **95**: 6870-6875 [PMID: 9618505 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.95.12.6870]
 - 29 **Halford S**, Sasieni P, Rowan A, Wasan H, Bodmer W, Talbot I, Hawkins N, Ward R, Tomlinson I. Low-level microsatellite instability occurs in most colorectal cancers and is a nonrandomly distributed quantitative trait. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 53-57 [PMID: 11782358]
 - 30 **Laiho P**, Launonen V, Lahermo P, Esteller M, Guo M, Herman JG, Mecklin JP, Järvinen H, Sistonen P, Kim KM, Shibata D, Houlston RS, Aaltonen LA. Low-level microsatellite instability in most colorectal carcinomas. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 1166-1170 [PMID: 11861399]
 - 31 **Watson MM**, Berg M, Søreide K. Prevalence and implications of elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotides in cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2014; **111**: 823-827 [PMID: 24691426 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2014.167]
 - 32 **Haugen AC**, Goel A, Yamada K, Marra G, Nguyen TP, Nagasaka T, Kanazawa S, Koike J, Kikuchi Y, Zhong X, Arita M, Shibuya K, Oshimura M, Hemmi H, Boland CR, Koi M. Genetic instability caused by loss of MutS homologue 3 in human colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 8465-8472 [PMID: 18922920 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-0002]
 - 33 **Yamada K**, Kanazawa S, Koike J, Sugiyama H, Xu C, Funahashi K, Boland CR, Koi M, Hemmi H. Microsatellite instability at tetranucleotide repeats in sporadic colorectal cancer in Japan. *Oncol*

- Rep* 2010; **23**: 551-561 [PMID: 20043121]
- 34 **Lee SY**, Chung H, Devaraj B, Iwazumi M, Han HS, Hwang DY, Seong MK, Jung BH, Carethers JM. Microsatellite alterations at selected tetranucleotide repeats are associated with morphologies of colorectal neoplasias. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1519-1525 [PMID: 20708618 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.08.001]
- 35 **Campregher C**, Schmid G, Ferk F, Knasmüller S, Khare V, Kortüm B, Dammann K, Lang M, Scharl T, Spittler A, Roig AI, Shay JW, Gerner C, Gasche C. MSH3-deficiency initiates EMASST without oncogenic transformation of human colon epithelial cells. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e50541 [PMID: 23209772 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0050541]
- 36 **Tseng-Rogenski SS**, Chung H, Wilk MB, Zhang S, Iwazumi M, Carethers JM. Oxidative stress induces nuclear-to-cytosol shift of hMSH3, a potential mechanism for EMASST in colorectal cancer cells. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e50616 [PMID: 23226332 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0050616]
- 37 **Carethers JM**. Hereditary, sporadic and metastatic colorectal cancer are commonly driven by specific spectrums of defective DNA mismatch repair components. *Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc* 2016; **127**: 81-97 [PMID: 28066040]
- 38 **Hsieh P**, Zhang Y. The Devil is in the details for DNA mismatch repair. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2017; **114**: 3552-3554 [PMID: 28356513 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1702747114]
- 39 **Gupta S**, Gellert M, Yang W. Mechanism of mismatch recognition revealed by human MutSβ bound to unpaired DNA loops. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2011; **19**: 72-78 [PMID: 22179786 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.2175]
- 40 **You JF**, Buhard O, Ligtenberg MJ, Kets CM, Niessen RC, Hofstra RM, Wagner A, Dinjens WN, Colas C, Lascols O, Collura A, Flejou JF, Duval A, Hamelin R. Tumours with loss of MSH6 expression are MSI-H when screened with a pentaplex of five mononucleotide repeats. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **103**: 1840-1845 [PMID: 21081928 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605988]
- 41 **Kantelinen J**, Kansikas M, Korhonen MK, Ollila S, Heinimann K, Kariola R, Nyström M. MutSbeta exceeds MutSalpha in dinucleotide loop repair. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **102**: 1068-1073 [PMID: 20160730 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605531]
- 42 **Adam R**, Spier I, Zhao B, Kloth M, Marquez J, Hinrichsen I, Kirfel J, Tafazzoli A, Horpaopan S, Uhlhaas S, Stienen D, Friedrichs N, Altmüller J, Laner A, Holzapfel S, Peters S, Kayser K, Thiele H, Holinski-Feder E, Marra G, Kristiansen G, Nöthen MM, Büttner R, Mösllein G, Betz RC, Brieger A, Lifton RP, Aretz S. Exome Sequencing Identifies Biallelic MSH3 Germline Mutations as a Recessive Subtype of Colorectal Adenomatous Polyposis. *Am J Hum Genet* 2016; **99**: 337-351 [PMID: 27476653 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2016.06.015]
- 43 **Devaraj B**, Lee A, Cabrera BL, Miyai K, Luo L, Ramamoorthy S, Keku T, Sandler RS, McGuiire KL, Carethers JM. Relationship of EMASST and microsatellite instability among patients with rectal cancer. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2010; **14**: 1521-1528 [PMID: 20844976 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-010-1340-6]
- 44 **Brentnall TA**, Crispin DA, Bronner MP, Cherian SP, Hueffed M, Rabinovitch PS, Rubin CE, Haggitt RC, Boland CR. Microsatellite instability in nonneoplastic mucosa from patients with chronic ulcerative colitis. *Cancer Res* 1996; **56**: 1237-1240 [PMID: 8640805]
- 45 **Ozaki K**, Nagasaka T, Notohara K, Kambara T, Takeda M, Sasamoto H, Jass JR, Tanaka N, Matsubara N. Heterogeneous microsatellite instability observed within epithelium of ulcerative colitis. *Int J Cancer* 2006; **119**: 2513-2519 [PMID: 16929496 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22095]
- 46 **Munakata K**, Koi M, Leconte P, Kitajima T, Tseng-Rogenski S, Uemura M, Mizushima T, Carethers JM. Loss of MSH3 and Subsequent EMASST Determines the Pathological Significance of MSI-L in Ulcerative Colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: S962 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(16)32556-5]
- 47 **Kohonen-Corish MR**, Daniel JJ, Chan C, Lin BP, Kwun SY, Dent OF, Dhillon VS, Trent RJ, Chapuis PH, Bokey EL. Low microsatellite instability is associated with poor prognosis in stage C colon cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 2318-2324 [PMID: 15800322 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.00.109]
- 48 **Wright CM**, Dent OF, Newland RC, Barker M, Chapuis PH, Bokey EL, Young JP, Leggett BA, Jass JR, Macdonald GA. Low level microsatellite instability may be associated with reduced cancer specific survival in sporadic stage C colorectal carcinoma. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 103-108 [PMID: 15591513 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.034579]
- 49 **Lee SY**, Kim DW, Lee HS, Ihn MH, Oh HK, Min BS, Kim WR, Huh JW, Yun JA, Lee KY, Kim NK, Lee WY, Kim HC, Kang SB. Low-Level Microsatellite Instability as a Potential Prognostic Factor in Sporadic Colorectal Cancer. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2015; **94**: e2260 [PMID: 26683947 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000002260]
- 50 **Azzoni C**, Bottarelli L, Cecchini S, Silini EM, Bordi C, Sarli L. Sporadic colorectal carcinomas with low-level microsatellite instability: a distinct subgroup with specific clinicopathological and molecular features. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2011; **26**: 445-453 [PMID: 21336644 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1133-8]
- 51 **Garcia M**, Choi C, Kim HR, Daoud Y, Toiyama Y, Takahashi M, Goel A, Boland CR, Koi M. Association between recurrent metastasis from stage II and III primary colorectal tumors and moderate microsatellite instability. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 48-50.e1 [PMID: 22465427 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.03.034]
- 52 **Carethers JM**, Koi M, Tseng-Rogenski SS. EMASST is a Form of Microsatellite Instability That is Initiated by Inflammation and Modulates Colorectal Cancer Progression. *Genes (Basel)* 2015; **6**: 185-205 [PMID: 25836926 DOI: 10.3390/genes6020185]
- 53 **Koi M**, Garcia M, Choi C, Kim HR, Koike J, Hemmi H, Nagasaka T, Okugawa Y, Toiyama Y, Kitajima T, Imaoka H, Kusunoki M, Chen YH, Mukherjee B, Boland CR, Carethers JM. Microsatellite Alterations With Allelic Loss at 9p24.2 Signify Less-Aggressive Colorectal Cancer Metastasis. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 944-955 [PMID: 26752111 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.12.032]
- 54 **Cortes-Ciriano I**, Lee S, Park WY, Kim TM, Park PJ. A molecular portrait of microsatellite instability across multiple cancers. *Nat Commun* 2017; **8**: 15180 [PMID: 28585546 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms15180]
- 55 **Cole BF**, Logan RF, Halabi S, Benamouzig R, Sandler RS, Grainge MJ, Chaussade S, Baron JA. Aspirin for the chemoprevention of colorectal adenomas: meta-analysis of the randomized trials. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2009; **101**: 256-266 [PMID: 19211452 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djn485]
- 56 **Cook NR**, Lee IM, Zhang SM, Moorthy MV, Buring JE. Alternate-day, low-dose aspirin and cancer risk: long-term observational follow-up of a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2013; **159**: 77-85 [PMID: 23856681 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-159-2-201307160-0002]
- 57 **Frouws MA**, van Herk-Sukel MPP, Maas HA, Van de Velde CJH, Portielje JEA, Liefers GJ, Bastiaannet E. The mortality reducing effect of aspirin in colorectal cancer patients: Interpreting the evidence. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2017; **55**: 120-127 [PMID: 28359968 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2016.12.008]
- 58 **Bertagnolli MM**, Eagle CJ, Zauber AG, Redston M, Solomon SD, Kim K, Tang J, Rosenstein RB, Wittes J, Corle D, Hess TM, Woloj GM, Boisserie F, Anderson WF, Viner JL, Bagheri D, Burn J, Chung DC, Dewar T, Foley TR, Hoffman N, Macrae F, Pruitt RE, Saltzman JR, Salzman B, Sylwestrowicz T, Gordon GB, Hawk ET; APC Study Investigators. Celecoxib for the prevention of sporadic colorectal adenomas. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 873-884 [PMID: 16943400 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061355]
- 59 **Arber N**, Eagle CJ, Spicak J, Rácz I, Dite P, Hajer J, Zavoral M, Lechuga MJ, Gerletti P, Tang J, Rosenstein RB, Macdonald K, Bhadra P, Fowler R, Wittes J, Zauber AG, Solomon SD, Levin B; PreSAP Trial Investigators. Celecoxib for the prevention of colorectal adenomatous polyps. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 885-895 [PMID: 16943401 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061652]
- 60 **Baron JA**, Sandler RS, Bresalier RS, Quan H, Riddell R, Lanas A, Bolognese JA, Oxenius B, Horgan K, Loftus S, Morton DG; APPROVe Trial Investigators. A randomized trial of rofecoxib for the chemoprevention of colorectal adenomas. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 1674-1682 [PMID: 17087947 DOI: 10.1053/

- j.gastro.200608.079]
- 61 **Yamauchi T**, Watanabe M, Hasegawa H, Nishibori H, Ishii Y, Tatematsu H, Yamamoto K, Kubota T, Kitajima M. The potential for a selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor in the prevention of liver metastasis in human colorectal cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2003; **23**: 245-249 [PMID: 12680220]
 - 62 **Yao M**, Kargman S, Lam EC, Kelly CR, Zheng Y, Luk P, Kwong E, Evans JF, Wolfe MM. Inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2 by rofecoxib attenuates the growth and metastatic potential of colorectal carcinoma in mice. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 586-592 [PMID: 12566300]
 - 63 **Chan AT**, Ogino S, Fuchs CS. Aspirin and the risk of colorectal cancer in relation to the expression of COX-2. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 2131-2142 [PMID: 17522398 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa067208]
 - 64 **Reimers MS**, Bastiaannet E, Langley RE, van Eijk R, van Vlierberghe RL, Lemmens VE, van Herk-Sukel MP, van Wezel T, Fodde R, Kuppen PJ, Morreau H, van de Velde CJ, Liefers GJ. Expression of HLA class I antigen, aspirin use, and survival after a diagnosis of colon cancer. *JAMA Intern Med* 2014; **174**: 732-739 [PMID: 24687028 DOI: 10.1001/jamainternmed.2014.511]
 - 65 **Liao X**, Lochhead P, Nishihara R, Morikawa T, Kuchiba A, Yamauchi M, Imamura Y, Qian ZR, Baba Y, Shima K, Sun R, Nosho K, Meyerhardt JA, Giovannucci E, Fuchs CS, Chan AT, Ogino S. Aspirin use, tumor PIK3CA mutation, and colorectal-cancer survival. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **367**: 1596-1606 [PMID: 23094721 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1207756]
 - 66 **Gray RT**, Cantwell MM, Coleman HG, Loughrey MB, Bankhead P, McQuaid S, O'Neill RF, Arthur K, Bingham V, McGready C, Gavin AT, Cardwell CR, Johnston BT, James JA, Hamilton PW, Salto-Tellez M, Murray LJ. Evaluation of PTGS2 Expression, PIK3CA Mutation, Aspirin Use and Colon Cancer Survival in a Population-Based Cohort Study. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2017; **8**: e91 [PMID: 28448072 DOI: 10.1038/ctg.2017.18]
 - 67 **Ng K**, Meyerhardt JA, Chan AT, Sato K, Chan JA, Niedzwiecki D, Saltz LB, Mayer RJ, Benson AB 3rd, Schaefer PL, Whittom R, Hantel A, Goldberg RM, Venook AP, Ogino S, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS. Aspirin and COX-2 inhibitor use in patients with stage III colon cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2014; **107**: 345 [PMID: 25432409 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dju345]
 - 68 **Ma X**, Aoki T, Tsuruyama T, Narumiya S. Definition of Prostaglandin E2-EP2 Signals in the Colon Tumor Microenvironment That Amplify Inflammation and Tumor Growth. *Cancer Res* 2015; **75**: 2822-2832 [PMID: 26018088 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472]
 - 69 **Angelova M**, Charoentong P, Hackl H, Fischer ML, Snajder R, Krogsdam AM, Waldner MJ, Bindea G, Mlecnik B, Galon J, Trajanoski Z. Characterization of the immunophenotypes and antigenomes of colorectal cancers reveals distinct tumor escape mechanisms and novel targets for immunotherapy. *Genome Biol* 2015; **16**: 64 [PMID: 25853550 DOI: 10.1186/s13059-015-0620-6]
 - 70 **Becht E**, de Reyniès A, Giraldo NA, Pilati C, Buttard B, Lacroix L, Selves J, Sautès-Fridman C, Laurent-Puig P, Fridman WH. Immune and Stromal Classification of Colorectal Cancer Is Associated with Molecular Subtypes and Relevant for Precision Immunotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 4057-4066 [PMID: 26994146 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-2879]
 - 71 **Zelenay S**, van der Veen AG, Böttcher JP, Snelgrove KJ, Rogers N, Acton SE, Chakravarty P, Girotti MR, Marais R, Quezada SA, Sahai E, Reis e Sousa C. Cyclooxygenase-Dependent Tumor Growth through Evasion of Immunity. *Cell* 2015; **162**: 1257-1270 [PMID: 26343581 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.08.015]
 - 72 **Fearon ER**, Vogelstein B. A genetic model for colorectal tumorigenesis. *Cell* 1990; **61**: 759-767 [PMID: 2188735 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(90)90186-I]
 - 73 **Ahrendt SA**, Decker PA, Doffek K, Wang B, Xu L, Demeure MJ, Jen J, Sidransky D. Microsatellite instability at selected tetranucleotide repeats is associated with p53 mutations in non-small cell lung cancer. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 2488-2491 [PMID: 10811129]
 - 74 **Li J**, Koike J, Kugoh H, Arita M, Ohhira T, Kikuchi Y, Funahashi K, Takamatsu K, Boland CR, Koi M, Hemmi H. Down-regulation of MutS homolog 3 by hypoxia in human colorectal cancer. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2012; **1823**: 889-899 [PMID: 22343000 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamer.2012.01.017]
 - 75 **Robles AI**, Traverso G, Zhang M, Roberts NJ, Khan MA, Joseph C, Lauwers GY, Selaru FM, Popoli M, Pittman ME, Ke X, Hruban RH, Meltzer SJ, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Harris CC, Papadopoulos N. Whole-Exome Sequencing Analyses of Inflammatory Bowel Disease-Associated Colorectal Cancers. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 931-943 [PMID: 26764183 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.12.036]
 - 76 **Yaeger R**, Shah MA, Miller VA, Kelsen JR, Wang K, Heins ZJ, Ross JS, He Y, Sanford E, Yantiss RK, Balasubramanian S, Stephens PJ, Schultz N, Oren M, Tang L, Kelsen D. Genomic Alterations Observed in Colitis-Associated Cancers Are Distinct From Those Found in Sporadic Colorectal Cancers and Vary by Type of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **151**: 278-287. e6 [PMID: 27063727 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.04.001]
 - 77 **Brennan CA**, Garrett WS. Gut Microbiota, Inflammation, and Colorectal Cancer. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 2016; **70**: 395-411 [PMID: 27607555 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-micro-102215-095513]
 - 78 **Sears CL**, Garrett WS. Microbes, microbiota, and colon cancer. *Cell Host Microbe* 2014; **15**: 317-328 [PMID: 24629338 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2014.02.007]
 - 79 **McCoy AN**, Araújo-Pérez F, Azcárate-Peril A, Yeh JJ, Sandler RS, Keku TO. Fusobacterium is associated with colorectal adenomas. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e53653 [PMID: 23335968 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0053653]
 - 80 **Kostic AD**, Chun E, Robertson L, Glickman JN, Gallini CA, Michaud M, Clancy TE, Chung DC, Lochhead P, Hold GL, El-Omar EM, Brenner D, Fuchs CS, Meyerson M, Garrett WS. Fusobacterium nucleatum potentiates intestinal tumorigenesis and modulates the tumor-immune microenvironment. *Cell Host Microbe* 2013; **14**: 207-215 [PMID: 23954159 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2013.07.007]
 - 81 **Ito M**, Kanno S, Nosho K, Sukawa Y, Mitsuhashi K, Kurihara H, Igarashi H, Takahashi T, Tachibana M, Takahashi H, Yoshii S, Takenouchi T, Hasegawa T, Okita K, Hirata K, Maruyama R, Suzuki H, Imai K, Yamamoto H, Shinomura Y. Association of Fusobacterium nucleatum with clinical and molecular features in colorectal serrated pathway. *Int J Cancer* 2015; **137**: 1258-1268 [PMID: 25703934 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.29488]
 - 82 **Tahara T**, Yamamoto E, Suzuki H, Maruyama R, Chung W, Garriga J, Jelinek J, Yamano HO, Sugai T, An B, Shureiqi I, Toyota M, Kondo Y, Estécio MR, Issa JP. Fusobacterium in colonic flora and molecular features of colorectal carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2014; **74**: 1311-1318 [PMID: 24385213 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-13-1865]
 - 83 **Nosho K**, Sukawa Y, Adachi Y, Ito M, Mitsuhashi K, Kurihara H, Kanno S, Yamamoto I, Ishigami K, Igarashi H, Maruyama R, Imai K, Yamamoto H, Shinomura Y. Association of Fusobacterium nucleatum with immunity and molecular alterations in colorectal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 557-566 [PMID: 26811607 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i2.557]
 - 84 **Mima K**, Nishihara R, Qian ZR, Cao Y, Sukawa Y, Nowak JA, Yang J, Dou R, Masugi Y, Song M, Kostic AD, Giannakis M, Bullman S, Milner DA, Baba H, Giovannucci EL, Garraway LA, Freeman GJ, Dranoff G, Garrett WS, Huttenhower C, Meyerson M, Meyerhardt JA, Chan AT, Fuchs CS, Ogino S. Fusobacterium nucleatum in colorectal carcinoma tissue and patient prognosis. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 1973-1980 [PMID: 26311717 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310101]
 - 85 **Yu T**, Guo F, Yu Y, Sun T, Ma D, Han J, Qian Y, Kryczek I, Sun D, Nagarsheth N, Chen Y, Chen H, Hong J, Zou W, Fang JY. Fusobacterium nucleatum Promotes Chemoresistance to Colorectal Cancer by Modulating Autophagy. *Cell* 2017; **170**: 548-563. e16 [PMID: 28753429 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.07.008]
 - 86 **Kawakami H**, Zaanen A, Sinicrope FA. Implications of mismatch repair-deficient status on management of early stage colorectal cancer. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2015; **6**: 676-684 [PMID: 26697201 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2078-6891.2015.065]
 - 87 **Suzuki S**, Iwaizumi M, Tseng-Rogenski S, Hamaya Y, Miyajima H, Kanaoka S, Sugimoto K, Carethers JM. Production of truncated MBD4 protein by frameshift mutation in DNA mismatch repair-

- deficient cells enhances 5-fluorouracil sensitivity that is independent of hMLH1 status. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2016; **17**: 760-768 [PMID: 27115207 DOI: 10.1080/15384047.2016.1178430]
- 88 **Toprak NU**, Yagci A, Gulluoglu BM, Akin ML, Demirkalem P, Celenk T, Soyletir G. A possible role of *Bacteroides fragilis* enterotoxin in the aetiology of colorectal cancer. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2006; **12**: 782-786 [PMID: 16842574 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2006.01494.x]
- 89 **Bolejic A**, Hechenbleikner EM, Goodwin AC, Badani R, Stein EM, Lazarev MG, Ellis B, Carroll KC, Albesiano E, Wick EC, Platz EA, Pardoll DM, Sears CL. The *Bacteroides fragilis* toxin gene is prevalent in the colon mucosa of colorectal cancer patients. *Clin Infect Dis* 2015; **60**: 208-215 [PMID: 25305284 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciu787]
- 90 **Purcell RV**, Pearson J, Aitchison A, Dixon L, Frizelle FA, Keenan JI. Colonization with enterotoxigenic *Bacteroides fragilis* is associated with early-stage colorectal neoplasia. *PLoS One* 2017; **12**: e0171602 [PMID: 28151975 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0171602]
- 91 **Wu S**, Rhee KJ, Albesiano E, Rabizadeh S, Wu X, Yen HR, Huso DL, Brancati FL, Wick E, McAllister F, Housseau F, Pardoll DM, Sears CL. A human colonic commensal promotes colon tumorigenesis via activation of T helper type 17 T cell responses. *Nat Med* 2009; **15**: 1016-1022 [PMID: 19701202 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2015]
- 92 **Sears CL**, Geis AL, Housseau F. *Bacteroides fragilis* subverts mucosal biology: from symbiont to colon carcinogenesis. *J Clin Invest* 2014; **124**: 4166-4172 [PMID: 25105360 DOI: 10.1172/JCI72334]
- 93 **Arthur JC**, Perez-Chanona E, Mühlbauer M, Tomkovich S, Uronis JM, Fan TJ, Campbell BJ, Abujamel T, Dogan B, Rogers AB, Rhodes JM, Stintzi A, Simpson KW, Hansen JJ, Keku TO, Fodor AA, Jobin C. Intestinal inflammation targets cancer-inducing activity of the microbiota. *Science* 2012; **338**: 120-123 [PMID: 22903521 DOI: 10.1126/science.1224820]
- 94 **Bonnet M**, Buc E, Sauvanet P, Darcha C, Dubois D, Pereira B, Déchelotte P, Bonnet R, Pezet D, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Colonization of the human gut by *E. coli* and colorectal cancer risk. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 859-867 [PMID: 24334760 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-1343]
- 95 **Tomkovich S**, Yang Y, Winglee K, Gauthier J, Mühlbauer M, Sun X, Mohamadzadeh M, Liu X, Martin P, Wang GP, Oswald E, Fodor AA, Jobin C. Locoregional Effects of Microbiota in a Preclinical Model of Colon Carcinogenesis. *Cancer Res* 2017; **77**: 2620-2632 [PMID: 28416491 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-16-3472]
- 96 **Scott TA**, Quintaneiro LM, Norvaisas P, Lui PP, Wilson MP, Leung KY, Herrera-Dominguez L, Sudiwala S, Pessia A, Clayton PT, Bryson K, Velagapudi V, Mills PB, Typas A, Greene NDE, Cabreiro F. Host-Microbe Co-metabolism Dictates Cancer Drug Efficacy in *C. elegans*. *Cell* 2017; **169**: 442-456.e18 [PMID: 28431245 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.03.040]
- 97 **Sugawara N**, Pâques F, Colaiácovo M, Haber JE. Role of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Msh2 and Msh3 repair proteins in double-strand break-induced recombination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 9214-9219 [PMID: 9256462 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.17.9214]
- 98 **Dietlein F**, Thelen L, Jokic M, Jachimowicz RD, Ivan L, Knittel G, Leeser U, van Oers J, Edelmann W, Heukamp LC, Reinhardt HC. A functional cancer genomics screen identifies a druggable synthetic lethal interaction between MSH3 and PRKDC. *Cancer Discov* 2014; **4**: 592-605 [PMID: 24556366 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290]
- 99 **Burdova K**, Mihaljevic B, Sturzenegger A, Chappidi N, Janscak P. The Mismatch-Binding Factor MutSβ Can Mediate ATR Activation in Response to DNA Double-Strand Breaks. *Mol Cell* 2015; **59**: 603-614 [PMID: 26212458 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2015.06.026]
- 100 **Dietlein F**, Thelen L, Reinhardt HC. Cancer-specific defects in DNA repair pathways as targets for personalized therapeutic approaches. *Trends Genet* 2014; **30**: 326-339 [PMID: 25017190 DOI: 10.1016/j.tig.2014.06.003]
- 101 **Moudry P**, Watanabe K, Wolanin KM, Bartkova J, Wassing IE, Watanabe S, Strauss R, Troelsgaard Pedersen R, Oestergaard VH, Lisby M, Andújar-Sánchez M, Maya-Mendoza A, Esashi F, Lukas J, Bartek J. TOPBP1 regulates RAD51 phosphorylation and chromatin loading and determines PARP inhibitor sensitivity. *J Cell Biol* 2016; **212**: 281-288 [PMID: 26811421 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.201507042]
- 102 **Lee JH**, Paull TT. Direct activation of the ATM protein kinase by the Mre11/Rad50/Nbs1 complex. *Science* 2004; **304**: 93-96 [PMID: 15064416 DOI: 10.1126/science.1091496]
- 103 **Sedelnikova OA**, Redon CE, Dickey JS, Nakamura AJ, Georgakilas AG, Bonner WM. Role of oxidatively induced DNA lesions in human pathogenesis. *Mutat Res* 2010; **704**: 152-159 [PMID: 20060490 DOI: 10.1016/j.mrrev.2009.12.005]
- 104 **McCool KW**, Miyamoto S. DNA damage-dependent NF-κB activation: NEMO turns nuclear signaling inside out. *Immunol Rev* 2012; **246**: 311-326 [PMID: 22435563 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2012.01101.x]
- 105 **Lee H**, Herrmann A, Deng JH, Kujawski M, Niu G, Li Z, Forman S, Jove R, Pardoll DM, Yu H. Persistently activated Stat3 maintains constitutive NF-κB activity in tumors. *Cancer Cell* 2009; **15**: 283-293 [PMID: 19345327 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2009.02.015]
- 106 **Liu X**, Ji Q, Ye N, Sui H, Zhou L, Zhu H, Fan Z, Cai J, Li Q. Berberine Inhibits Invasion and Metastasis of Colorectal Cancer Cells via COX-2/PGE2 Mediated JAK2/STAT3 Signaling Pathway. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0123478 [PMID: 25954974 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0123478]
- 107 **Xiong H**, Du W, Sun TT, Lin YW, Wang JL, Hong J, Fang JY. A positive feedback loop between STAT3 and cyclooxygenase-2 gene may contribute to *Helicobacter pylori*-associated human gastric tumorigenesis. *Int J Cancer* 2014; **134**: 2030-2040 [PMID: 24127267 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28539]
- 108 **Hein MY**, Hubner NC, Poser I, Cox J, Nagaraj N, Toyoda Y, Gak IA, Weisswange I, Mansfeld J, Buchholz F, Hyman AA, Mann M. A human interactome in three quantitative dimensions organized by stoichiometries and abundances. *Cell* 2015; **163**: 712-723 [PMID: 26496610 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.09.053]
- 109 **Leung SY**, Yuen ST, Chung LP, Chu KM, Chan AS, Ho JC. hMLH1 promoter methylation and lack of hMLH1 expression in sporadic gastric carcinomas with high-frequency microsatellite instability. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 159-164 [PMID: 9892201]
- 110 **Chung TK**, Cheung TH, Wang VW, Yu MY, Wong YF. Microsatellite instability, expression of hMSH2 and hMLH1 and HPV infection in cervical cancer and their clinico-pathological association. *Gynecol Obstet Invest* 2001; **52**: 98-103 [PMID: 11586036 DOI: 10.1159/000052951]
- 111 **Yamamoto H**, Itoh F, Nakamura H, Fukushima H, Sasaki S, Perucho M, Imai K. Genetic and clinical features of human pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas with widespread microsatellite instability. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 3139-3144 [PMID: 11306499]
- 112 **Watanabe Y**, Koi M, Hemmi H, Hoshai H, Noda K. A change in microsatellite instability caused by cisplatin-based chemotherapy of ovarian cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2001; **85**: 1064-1069 [PMID: 11592780 DOI: 10.1054/bjoc.2001.2037]
- 113 **Hussein MR**, Sun M, Tuthill RJ, Roggero E, Monti JA, Sudilovsky EC, Wood GS, Sudilovsky O. Comprehensive analysis of 112 melanocytic skin lesions demonstrates microsatellite instability in melanomas and dysplastic nevi, but not in benign nevi. *J Cutan Pathol* 2001; **28**: 343-350 [PMID: 11437939 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-0560.2001.280702.x]
- 114 **Szybka M**, Bartkowiak J, Zakrzewski K, Polis L, Liberski P, Kordek R. Microsatellite instability and expression of DNA mismatch repair genes in malignant astrocytic tumors from adult and pediatric patients. *Clin Neuropathol* 2003; **22**: 180-186 [PMID: 12908754]
- 115 **Halford SE**, Sawyer EJ, Lambros MB, Gorman P, Macdonald ND, Talbot IC, Foulkes WD, Gillett CE, Barnes DM, Akslen LA, Lee K, Jacobs IJ, Hanby AM, Ganesan TS, Salvesen HB, Bodmer WF, Tomlinson IP, Roylance RR. MSI-low, a real phenomenon which varies in frequency among cancer types. *J Pathol* 2003; **201**: 389-394 [PMID: 14595750 DOI: 10.1002/path.1453]
- 116 **Chiappini F**, Gross-Goupil M, Saffroy R, Azoulay D, Emile JF, Veillhan LA, Delvart V, Chevalier S, Bismuth H, Debuire B, Lemoine A. Microsatellite instability mutator phenotype in hepatocellular carcinoma in non-alcoholic and non-virally infected

- normal livers. *Carcinogenesis* 2004; **25**: 541-547 [PMID: 14656944 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgh035]
- 117 **Evans SC**, Gillis A, Geldenhuys L, Vaninetti NM, Malatjalian DA, Porter GA, Guernsey DL, Casson AG. Microsatellite instability in esophageal adenocarcinoma. *Cancer Lett* 2004; **212**: 241-251 [PMID: 15279904 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2004.03.011]
- 118 **Choy KW**, Pang CP, Fan DS, Lee TC, Wang JH, Abramson DH, Lo KW, To KF, Yu CB, Beaverson KL, Cheung KF, Lam DS. Microsatellite instability and MLH1 promoter methylation in human retinoblastoma. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2004; **45**: 3404-3409 [PMID: 15452042 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.03-1273]
- 119 **Kawaguchi K**, Oda Y, Takahira T, Saito T, Yamamoto H, Kobayashi C, Tamiya S, Oda S, Iwamoto Y, Tsuneyoshi M. Microsatellite instability and hMLH1 and hMSH2 expression analysis in soft tissue sarcomas. *Oncol Rep* 2005; **13**: 241-246 [PMID: 15643505 DOI: 10.3892/or.13.2.241]
- 120 **Saetta AA**, Gigelou F, Papanastasiou PI, Koilakou SV, Kalekou-Greca H, Miliaras D, Michalopoulos NV, Patsouris E. High-level microsatellite instability is not involved in gallbladder carcinogenesis. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2006; **80**: 67-71 [PMID: 15963980 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexmp.2005.04.001]
- 121 **Koy S**, Plaschke J, Luksch H, Friedrich K, Kuhlisch E, Eckelt U, Martinez R. Microsatellite instability and loss of heterozygosity in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. *Head Neck* 2008; **30**: 1105-1113 [PMID: 18615731 DOI: 10.1002/hed.20857]
- 122 **Perinchery G**, Nojima D, Gohardakhshan R, Tanaka Y, Alonzo J, Dahiya R. Microsatellite instability of dinucleotide tandem repeat sequences is higher than trinucleotide, tetranucleotide and pentanucleotide repeat sequences in prostate cancer. *Int J Oncol* 2000; **16**: 1203-1209 [PMID: 10811996 DOI: 10.3892/ijo.16.6.1203]
- 123 **Arai H**, Okudela K, Oshiro H, Komitsu N, Mitsui H, Nishii T, Tsuboi M, Nozawa A, Noishiki Y, Ohashi K, Inui K, Masuda M. Elevated microsatellite alterations at selected tetra-nucleotide (EMAST) in non-small cell lung cancers--a potential determinant of susceptibility to multiple malignancies. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2013; **6**: 395-410 [PMID: 23412080]
- 124 **Catto JW**, Azzouzi AR, Amira N, Rehman I, Feeley KM, Cross SS, Fromont G, Sibony M, Hamdy FC, Cussenot O, Meuth M. Distinct patterns of microsatellite instability are seen in tumours of the urinary tract. *Oncogene* 2003; **22**: 8699-8706 [PMID: 14647464 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1206964]
- 125 **Carethers JM**, Jung BH. Genetics and Genetic Biomarkers in Sporadic Colorectal Cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **149**: 1177-1190. e3 [PMID: 26216840 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.06.047]
- 126 **Ashktorab H**, Kupfer SS, Brim H, Carethers JM. Racial Disparity in Gastrointestinal Cancer Risk. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **153**: 910-923 [PMID: 28807841 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.08.018]

P- Reviewer: Fan RY, Li C, Wani IA **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Wang CH



Advance in plasma *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for colorectal cancer early detection

Yu Wang, Pei-Min Chen, Rong-Bin Liu

Yu Wang, School of Public Health, Guangzhou Medical University, Guangzhou 510180, Guangdong Province, China

Pei-Min Chen, School of Public Health, Guangzhou Medical University, Guangzhou 510180, Guangdong Province, China

Rong-Bin Liu, Department of Ultrasound, Sun Yat-sen Memorial Hospital, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou 510120, Guangdong Province, China

ORCID number: Yu Wang (0000-0002-0650-8126); Pei-Min Chen (0000-0002-5337-9910); Rong-Bin Liu (0000-0003-2170-7921).

Author contributions: Wang Y wrote the paper; Chen PM collected and analyzed the data; Liu RB made substantial contributions to submission, acquiring data, interpreting the results, revising the manuscript and final approval of the version of the article.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Correspondence to: Rong-Bin Liu, MD, Key Laboratory of Malignant Tumor Gene Regulation and Target Therapy of Guangdong Higher Education Institutes, Sun Yat-sen Memorial Hospital, Sun Yat-sen University, No. 107, Yanjiang West Road, Yuexiu District, Guangzhou 510120, Guangdong Province, China. liurb3@mail2.sysu.edu.cn
Telephone: +86-20-81332199

Received: October 21, 2017

Peer-review started: October 25, 2017

First decision: November 9, 2017

Revised: November 10, 2017

Accepted: December 6, 2017

Article in press: December 6, 2017

Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract

This review article summarizes the research advances of the plasma-based *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for the clinical detection of colorectal cancer and its limitations. Colorectal cancer is a common malignancy with a poor prognosis and a high mortality, for which early detection and diagnosis are particularly crucial for the high-risk groups. Increasing evidence supported that *SEPT9* gene methylation is associated with the pathogenesis of colorectal cancer and that detecting the level of methylation of *SEPT9* in the peripheral blood can be used for screening of colorectal cancer in susceptible populations. In recent years, the data obtained in clinical studies demonstrated that the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay has a good diagnostic performance with regard to both sensitivity and specificity with the advantage of better acceptability, convenience and compliance with serological testing compared with fecal occult blood tests and carcinoembryonic antigen for colorectal cancer (CRC). Furthermore, the combination of multiple methods or markers has become a growing trend for CRC detection and screening. Nevertheless, the clinical availability of the methylated *SEPT9* assay is still limited because of the large degree of sample heterogeneity caused by demographic characteristics, pathological features, comorbidities and/or technique selection. Another factor is the cost-effectiveness of colorectal cancer screening strategies that hinders its large-scale application. In addition, improvements in its accuracy in detecting adenomas and premalignant polyps are required.

Key words: Plasma; *SEPT9*; Methylation; Colorectal cancer; Early detection

© The Author(s) 2018. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: The methylated *SEPT9* gene has been implicated as a biomarker for colorectal cancer associated with the pathogenesis of colorectal cancer (CRC). In this article, we reviewed the literature on the correlation of *SEPT9* gene and colorectal cancer and the theoretical basis of the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay. Then, we focused on the diagnostic performance of the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for CRC by analyzing the clinical trial studies and compared that assay with other methods. Finally, we discussed the limitations of the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay in clinical application. We hope that this article can provide a comprehensive overview of the progress achieved in the *SEPT9* methylation assay for both the basic and clinical sciences.

Wang Y, Chen PM, Liu RB. Advance in plasma *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for colorectal cancer early detection. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 15-22 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/15.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.15>

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most common malignant tumors of the digestive system and results in significant morbidity and mortality. As it is estimated, there were approximately 135430 new cases of colorectal cancer, including men and women, in 2017^[1]. The incidence is higher in men than women and markedly increases with age^[2]. CRC kills almost 700000 people every year, making it the world's fourth deadliest cancer (after lung, liver and stomach cancers)^[3]. As research has shown, the incidence and mortality rates of CRC vary up to 10-fold worldwide, with distinct gradients across human development, pointing towards widening disparities and an increasing burden in countries in transition^[4]. In general, its incidence and mortality rates are still rising rapidly in many low-income and middle-income countries.

The initial symptoms of colorectal cancer, however, are atypical, leading to a poor prognosis and high fatality rate. Therefore, screening of CRC in the population is of great significance for its early diagnosis and treatment. Currently, CRC screening approaches are divided into two categories: Invasive and noninvasive methods. The invasive methods, such as colonoscopy, remain the main screening tools due to their very good diagnostic performance, enabling the detection and removal of precancerous lesions^[5]. However, it requires thorough bowel preparations. Additionally, discomfort and privacy infringement contribute to poor compliance among patients. Non-invasive screening approaches, which include fecal occult blood tests (FOBT), fecal immunochemical tests (FITs) and

carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), are more easily acceptable. However, their effectiveness may not be guaranteed. Although various guideline-recommended methods are available for CRC detection, patient compliance remains low. The data in 2013 showed that only approximately 57% of eligible adults adhered to the screening recommendations provided by the United States Preventive Services Task Force^[6]. Thus, it is very important to develop an efficient approach to enhance patient compliance that can be applied to screening the general population.

Studies^[7-9] have shown that the DNA methylation of certain genes is closely related to the development of colorectal cancer. Beggs *et al.*^[10] verified that methylation changes contribute substantially to the progression from normal mucosa to adenoma and to carcinoma; for instance, GRASP, which encodes the general receptor for phosphoinositide 1-associated scaffold protein, was differentially methylated in colorectal cancer. Aberrant DNA methylation in the genome may contribute to malignant transformation by silencing multiple tumor-suppressor genes. This type of epigenetic alteration is believed to occur early in tumor development and may precede genetic changes^[11]. In recent years, *SEPT9* gene methylation has been recognized as a hotspot and is considered to be a specific biomarker of the early stages of colorectal cancer. It may be a reliable indicator for screening CRC among high-risk individuals. This paper reviews the progress in the plasma-based *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for the detection of colorectal cancer.

SEPT9

As we know, there are 14 members (SEPT1-SEPT14) in the SEPT gene family, whose protein products Septins are a series of highly conserved GTP binding protein family. In humans, there are 13 genes, respectively named SEPT1 to SEPT13; the *SEPT9* gene is located on the human chromosome 17q25. 3^[12], contains 17 exons, and spans 240 × 10³ bp. The 5'-end regulatory regions of the *SEPT9* gene have a -C- phosphor -G- site (CpG island), which is the main site of DNA methylation. In mammals, 60%-90% of CpG sites are methylated, and most of the remaining unmethylated residues are clustered in CpG islands within functional gene promoters^[13]. It has been shown^[12,14,15] that SEPT 9 has 18 distinct transcripts encoding 15 polypeptides, with two transcripts (SEPT9_v4 and v4*) encoding the same polypeptide.

SEPT9 GENE AND COLORECTAL CANCER

In recent years, growing evidence has shown that the *SEPT9* gene is associated with malignant tumors. Peterson *et al.*^[16] used immunoprecipitation and immunofluorescence studies to analyze SEPT9_i1 and found that it interacts with both α and γ tubulin.

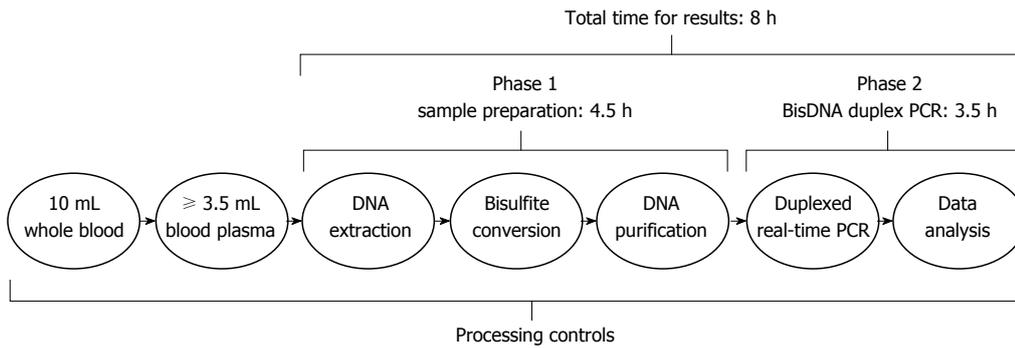


Figure 1 The outline of the Epi proColon work flow. The test consists of the Epi proColon Plasma Quick kit, PCR kit, and Control kit. The total assay time is approximately 8 h. For the Plasma Quick kit, 3.5 mL of plasma was mixed with an equal volume of lysis buffer; after incubating for 10 min, magnetic beads and absolute ethanol were added. After 45 min, impurities were removed from the magnetic beads by centrifugation; the purified DNA was then released from the beads in the elution buffer and treated at 80 °C with a solution of ammonium bisulfite for deamination of cytosine^[34]. After a series of washing steps, the converted DNA (bisulfite-modified DNA, bisDNA) was captured by magnetic beads. The bisDNA was assayed with the PCR kit on a Duplexed Real-Time PCR device. Finally, methylated SEPT9 and PCR results were recorded by the instrument software. In the whole working flow, the processing controls were included to monitor the execution of the procedure and ensure the validity of the test result and model^[34].

SEPT9_i1-expressing cells demonstrated dramatic chromosome segregation defects, centrosome amplification and cytokinesis defects, which indicates that SEPT9_i1 increases genomic instability in the process of tumorigenesis through two potential molecular mechanisms: defective chromosome segregation and cytokinesis failure. Additionally, expression of HIF^[17], JNK^[18] and Rho signaling pathways^[19] may also be potential mechanisms of colorectal cancer development in which the *SEPT9* gene is involved.

SEPT9 gene encodes a protein called septin-9, which is part of a group of proteins called septins. Septins are involved in various biological processes such as division of cytoplasm, cell polarization, vesicle transport and membrane reconstruction. The septin-9 protein also appears to act as a tumor suppressor, which means that it regulates cell growth and prevents cells from dividing too fast or in an uncontrolled way^[20]. When the methylation occurs at a CpG island, genes with high levels of 5-methylcytosine in their promoter region are transcriptionally silent^[21]; DNA methylation gradually accumulates on long-term silenced gene and may result in the inactivation of cancer suppressor genes. Tóth *et al.*^[22] have found that *SEPT9* mRNA expression decreased from adenoma to dysplasia to carcinoma in the progression of colon neoplastic disease, which presents a strong significant correlation of *SEPT9* methylation with the mRNA's low expression in CRC. Thus, downregulation of *SEPT9* mRNA and the decrease in *SEPT9* expression may account for the pathological progression from benign to malignant lesions in colon tissues.

PLASMA SEPT9 GENE METHYLATION ASSAY

Methods of the SEPT9 gene methylation assay

Due to epigenetic silencing of the *SEPT9* gene by promoter methylation in plasma, the company

Epigenomics AG first studied SEPT9 methylation based on the SEPT9 biomarker available in Europe in 2008^[23]. After one year, a commercial kit was finalized and the first generation of the CE-marked Epi proColon real-time PCR kit was launched. This CE-marked IVD (*In vitro* Diagnostic) kit became publicly available in Europe in 2010. Currently, the second generation of the assay is commercially available as the Epi proColon 2.0 assay^[24].

In general, The Epi proColon test is an *in vitro* diagnostic PCR method for the qualitative detection of SEPT9 DNA methylation levels in plasma derived from patients' whole blood specimens (Figure 1). To perform the test, approximately 10 mL of whole blood is a source of sufficient plasma for the analysis. The testing cycle performed with the current manual workflow takes approximately 8 h. As a first step, a minimum of 3.5 mL of blood plasma is isolated from the blood sample. Then, the Epi proColon 2.0 test consists of two phases. In Phase I, DNA is extracted from the plasma fraction and treated with bisulfite-conversion reagents and purified to obtain highly purified DNA^[25]. In Phase II, the test detects the hyper-methylated v2 region of the SEPT 9 gene and a region of the ACTB (β -actin) gene as an internal control by duplex real-time PCR^[26]. Finally, the Epi proColon 2.0 test only reports qualitative positive and negative results. A positive test is indicative of an increased likelihood for having CRC and a colonoscopy is recommended as a follow-up for diagnostic evaluation.

Diagnostic performance of plasma SEPT9 gene methylation

Increasingly, studies^[27-30] are suggesting that the methylation status of SEPT9 is a reliable index for screening CRC. For evaluating its diagnostic performance, we have collected several research results in which the sensitivity and specificity are key indicators. Table 1

Table 1 Sensitivity and specificity of the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for colorectal cancer detection

Publications	Number of cases	Sensitivity	Specificity	Algorithm	Assay used	Ref.
Tóth <i>et al</i> (2012)	184 (92 CRC, 92 no evidence of disease)	95.6%	84.8%	1/3	Epi proColon 2.0	[27]
		(95%CI: 89.2%-98.8%)	(95%CI: 75.8%-91.4%)			
Church <i>et al</i> (2014)	1516 (53 CRC, 1457 without CRC)	79.3%	98.9%	2/3	Epi proColon 1.0	[31]
		(95%CI: 69.6%-87.1%)	(95%CI: 94.1%-100%)			
Potter <i>et al</i> (2014)	1544 (44 CRC, 1500 non-CRC)	48.2%	91.5%	1/3	Epi proColon 1.0	[34]
Su <i>et al</i> (2014)	234 (172 CRC, 62 controls)	68.0%	80.0%	-	MSP-DHPLC	[28]
		(95%CI: 53%-80%)	(95%CI: 78%-82%)			
Johnson <i>et al</i> (2014)	301 (101 CRC, 200 non-CRC)	88.4%	93.5%	-	Epi proColon 1.0	[32]
		73.3%	81.5%	-		
Jin <i>et al</i> (2014)	476 (135 CRC, 341 non-CRC)	(95%CI: 63.9%-80.9%)	(95%CI: 75.5%-86.3%)	2/3	Epi proColon 2.0	[29]
		74.8%	87.4%			
Ørntoft <i>et al</i> (2015)	300 (150 CRC, 150 controls)	(95%CI: 67.0%-81.6%)	(95%CI: 83.5%-90.6%)	1/3	Epi proColon 1.0	[33]
		73.0%	82.0%			
Sharif <i>et al</i> (2016)	90 (45 CRC, 45 controls)	(95%CI: 64%-80%)	(95%CI: 75%-88%)	-	MS-HRM assay	[52]
		84.4%	99.0%			
Wu <i>et al</i> (2016)	1031 (291 CRC, 740 non-CRC)	73.0%	97.5%	-	Epi proColon 2.0	[30]
		76.6%	95.9%	-		
Nian <i>et al</i> (2016)	25 studies, 9927 samples (2975 CRC, 6952 non-CRC)	(95%CI: 71.3%-81.4%)	92.0%	2/3	Epi proColon 2.0	[35]
		71.0%	(95%CI: 89%-94%)			

CRC: Colorectal cancer.

shows the data from clinical trials using the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay published since 2012.

From the table, it can be seen that the plasma *SEPT9* gene methylation assay exhibited a high overall sensitivity and specificity for CRC detection. Moreover, with the improved method used in the subsequent studies, especially after the application of the second-generation *SEPT9* methylation assay (Epi proColon 2.0, Epigenomics AG, Germany), the detection sensitivity increased from approximately 48.2%-73.3%^[31-34] to approximately 71.0%-95.6%^[27,29,30,35], while the specificity improved from 80.0%-91.5% to 84.8%-98.9%. Meanwhile, Wu *et al*^[30] reported that the new *SEPT9* assay, with enhanced technical simplicity and a lower cost, presented a sensitivity of 76.6% and a specificity of 95.9%, which not only did not differ in performance compared with Epi proColon 2.0 but also reduced the complexity of the testing process and appeared to be a simpler, cheaper, more efficient, convenient, and user-friendly alternative for CRC screening. Additionally, methylation of *SEPT9* detected by MSP-DHPLC (methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography)^[28] shows that the sensitivity and specificity are as high as 88.4% and 93.5%, respectively, which also appears to be a useful biomarker in a clinical laboratory setting. Tóth *et al*^[36] measured the positive predictive value and negative predictive value, which reached up to 93.8% (30/32) and 84.6% (22/26), respectively, supporting the reliability of this assay for CRC detection. Nian *et al*^[35] also estimated an area under the curve (AUC) of 0.88 and diagnostic odds ratio of 27 (95%CI: 18-42) using a bivariate mixed effect model. Furthermore, Ørntoft *et al*^[33] found that the clinical sensitivity for

CRC stages I-IV was 37%, 91%, 77%, and 89%, respectively. In comparison, Jin *et al*^[29] described that methylated *SEPT9* was positive in 66.7% of stage I (12/18), 82.6% of stage II (19/23), 84.1% of stage III (37/44), and 100% of stage IV (5/5) cases in 90 cases of CRC whose stages were identified based on the surgically resected specimens. The results indicate that advanced stage CRCs are more easily detected by *SEPT9* methylation than the early stage. Although the sensitivity and specificity reported in Table 1 come from different studies, leading to the variation in the ability to detect CRC, these results are still comparable because the majority of studies used Epi proColon products as the commercialized tests, and multiple PCR reactions are performed in all of these studies, which determine the final test result.

As for the test performance of other non-invasive CRC detection approaches, according to retrospective case control studies^[27,31,37,38], the FOBT identifies individuals with CRC with a sensitivity between 33% and 79% and a specificity between 87% and 98%. Another recent case control study by Tóth *et al*^[27] showed that the FOBT was positive in 29.4% (5/17) of NED (no evidence of disease) and 68.2% (15/22) of CRC and that elevated CEA levels were detected in 14.8% (4/27) of NED and 51.8% (14/27) of CRC. Both the FOBT and CEA showed a lower sensitivity and specificity than *SEPT9* (95.6% and 84.8%). In addition, Lee *et al*^[39] reported that the sensitivity was as high as 79% (95%CI: 69%-86%) for FIT for CRC with a specificity of 94% (95%CI: 92%-95%) by meta-analysis, which is at the same level as *SEPT9*^[27]. Johnson *et al*^[32] obtained estimates of 68.0% (95%CI: 58.2-76.5%) for the sensitivity and 97.4% (95%CI: 94.1%-98.9%) for the specificity of FIT, and drew the

conclusion that the sensitivity of the Epi proColon test was statistically comparable to FIT by analyzing the paired samples. A study by Song *et al.*^[40] also showed that the SEPT9 assay exhibited significantly higher sensitivity than the FIT test (75.6% vs 67.1%, $P < 0.05$) in pooled data of the symptomatic population. In general, compared with these other CRC detection tests, the SEPT9 gene methylation assay shows a good diagnostic performance in both sensitivity and specificity with the advantage of better acceptability and compliance of serological testing.

Hence, the promoter hyper-methylation analysis of plasma SEPT9 DNA has the potential to serve as a non-invasive screening method for the identification of specific biomarkers, enabling early detection of CRC in a large population. This approach holds promise for increased accuracy, safety, affordability, and patient compliance^[41].

Combined detection of the SEPT9 assay with other colorectal cancer detection tests

The combination of multiple methods or markers has become an increasing trend in CRC detection and screening. A recent study conducted by Wu *et al.*^[30] demonstrated that the combination of SEPT9 + FIT had a high sensitivity for CRC detection (94.4%), and the sensitivity of combined examination of SEPT9 + FIT + CEA was 97.2% (76.6%, SEPT9 alone). Another study^[42] found that the sensitivity of joint examination of SEPT9 and FIT in CRC diagnosis was 97.8% (80.0%, SEPT9 alone) and that the specificity was 52.9%, whereas the advanced adenoma diagnosis was 67.6% (10.8%, SEPT9 alone) and 47.4%, respectively, which suggested that the combination of the SEPT9 and FIT assays not only significantly enhanced the sensitivity for CRC detection but also increased the positive detection rate for advanced adenoma. In the study of Yu *et al.*^[43], it was seen that the under-ROC curve area of SEPT9 with CEA and FOBT for CRC detection reached 0.935. Furthermore, other than the tests mentioned above, SEPT9 may be combined with other existing biomarkers for CRC detection, such as glycoprotein markers or other methylation markers^[12]. A study published by Tänzer *et al.*^[44] demonstrated the combined analysis of methylation status of SEPT9 and ALX4 to be highly significant in the detection of colorectal polyps with a sensitivity and specificity reaching 71% and 95%, respectively, indicating the potential use of the combined methods in detecting advanced precancerous colorectal lesions. However, further studies are still required to evaluate the effect of combined biomarker assays on CRC detection and screening.

Limitations of the SEPT9 methylation assay

Although the plasma-based SEPT9 methylation assay performs well with regard to both sensitivity and specificity, its clinical availability is still limited. As we can see in Table 1, there is a large degree of

heterogeneity among studies, which may be due to many causes, especially the impacts of non-tumor-related factors on DNA methylation, such as aging, sex, race, hormone levels, dietary factors^[45], lifestyle factors (smoking and alcohol consumption)^[46], and other environmental exposure factors. Song *et al.*^[47] found a high PDR (positive detection rate) of SEPT9 methylation in normal subjects and cancer patients over 60 years, which may reflect increased SEPT9 gene methylation levels with age. Additionally, the increased false negative rate of the SEPT9 assay is associated with diabetes, arthritis and arteriosclerosis ($P < 0.05$)^[33], which can explain why the diagnostic performance of the SEPT9 assay varies compared to previous retrospective case-control studies. Nevertheless, not enough is known to approximate the effect of demographic characteristics, pathological features and/or comorbidities on the results of the SEPT9 methylation assay. Moreover, using a 2/3 algorithm test has a high true negative rate, although its sensitivity was higher with a 1/3 algorithm test^[35]. On account of the capability of excluding non-cancer samples and avoiding the rate of misdiagnosis, the 2/3 algorithm is recommended for CRC detection. Therefore, the technique and method selection could also affect the laboratory results and lead to heterogeneity. Further studies should pay more attention to examining the variation in diagnostic accuracy and validating potential confounding factors affecting DNA methylation status, in the design of future experimental studies. These non-neoplastic factors should be taken into consideration when evaluating DNA methylation to avoid the influence those caused on the testing results.

The cost-effectiveness is another limitation that limited large-scale application of the SEPT9 methylation assay. It was reported^[48] that the methylated SEPT9-based strategies were not a cost-saving with the costs of \$8400 to \$11500 per quality-adjusted life-year gained in comparison with established screening strategies including FOBT, FIT, and colonoscopy. The current cost of the methylated SEPT9 test in Europe is approximately 150 Euros, considerably more than fecal tests^[31]. In brief, FIT dominated methylated SEPT9 and was preferred among all of the alternatives^[49,50]. Even so, the biomarker for colorectal cancer screening still offers potential benefits over current methods, but in order to realize its full potential, the plasma-based assay will need to be acceptable to clinicians and patients compared to current technologies and the medical environment. As the emerging SEPT9 methylation assay becomes available clinically, the decision over whether to adopt it will require weighing its costs, utilization and longitudinal adherence against the alternative of putting efforts into improving current screening strategies. At the population level, methylated SEPT9 yielded incremental benefit at acceptable costs when it increased the fraction of the population screened more than it was substituted for other strategies^[48]. Thus, screening costs, utilization,

adherence, and follow-up are the influential determinants of the cost-effectiveness of colorectal cancer screening strategies.

Moreover, the capability of the *SEPT9* gene methylation assay for detecting adenomas, which is the most common precancerous lesion of CRC, is limited. For early stage CRC (Stage I), polyps or adenomas, methylated *SEPT9* alone presented quite low sensitivity with approximately 35%^[25], 20%^[51] and 11.2%^[31], respectively, indicating that this biomarker may be far from sufficient and effective at screening asymptomatic CRC patients, despite the diagnostic value of detecting advanced stage CRCs (III-IV). With the transformation of the medical pattern, the focus of hygiene work is switching to prevention rather than curing. Thus, the detection of precancerous or early stage colorectal cancer is very crucial for the health workers to identify high-risk groups and to provide an accurate early diagnosis. Still, this assay faces significant challenges nowadays when introduced for detecting early pre-invasive pathological changes, such as adenomas and premalignant polyps. On the one hand, there is plenty of room for improvement in the method of the methylated *SEPT9* assay itself, such as amelioration of DNA isolation or enhancement of PCR efficiency. On the other hand, the combination of the *SEPT9* assay with other markers in CRC detection is at its initial stage, in spite of the detection rate increasing to 37%^[44] by applying an additional methylation marker like ALX4, but further research is still needed to evaluate the effect of joint detection and to explore its possibility, for the sake of improving the sensitivity for detection of early cancers and advanced adenomas. More studies on early-stage CRC are expected in the future.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

Taken together, the use of the plasma-based methylated biomarker *SEPT9* gene should be the alternative approach for CRC screening due to greater diagnostic performance, convenience, and compliance in comparison with non-serological methods. The methylated *SEPT9* assay showed relatively high pooled sensitivity, whereas it was also affected by many factors, leading to the high level of heterogeneity. Future clinical diagnostic studies of methylation in blood should consider the impacts of these factors, especially non-neoplastic factors (*e.g.*, aging, sex, lifestyle, coexistent disease, methodology) on diagnostic accuracy. Moreover, the cost of the *SEPT9* methylation assay is still much higher than the FOBT and FIT. And further investigation of early CRC is still required, as a result of its sensitivity for the asymptomatic population in the screening setting still not being satisfactory, but improvements in accuracy can be expected as the diagnostic technology evolves.

In the future, deciphering epigenetic information including DNA methylation and applying it to the

selection of appropriate detection methods and the development of relevant therapy is likely to transform the diagnosis and treatment of colorectal cancer, consequently decreasing mortality.

REFERENCES

- 1 Siegel RL, Miller KD, Fedewa SA, Ahnen DJ, Meester RGS, Barzi A, Jemal A. Colorectal cancer statistics, 2017. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2017; **67**: 177-193 [PMID: 28248415 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21395]
- 2 Brenner H, Kloor M, Pox CP. Colorectal cancer. *The Lancet* 2014; **383**: 1490-1502 [DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(13)61649-9]
- 3 Mármol I, Sánchez-de-Diego C, Pradilla Dieste A, Cerrada E, Rodríguez Yoldi MJ. Colorectal Carcinoma: A General Overview and Future Perspectives in Colorectal Cancer. *Int J Mol Sci* 2017; **18**: pii E197 [PMID: 28106826 DOI: 10.3390/ijms18010197]
- 4 Arnold M, Sierra MS, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global patterns and trends in colorectal cancer incidence and mortality. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 683-691 [PMID: 26818619 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310912]
- 5 Li B, Gan A, Chen X, Wang X, He W, Zhang X, Huang R, Zhou S, Song X, Xu A. Diagnostic Performance of DNA Hypermethylation Markers in Peripheral Blood for the Detection of Colorectal Cancer: A Meta-Analysis and Systematic Review. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0155095 [PMID: 27158984 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0155095]
- 6 Fedewa SA, Sauer AG, Siegel RL, Jemal A. Prevalence of major risk factors and use of screening tests for cancer in the United States. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2015; **24**: 637-652 [PMID: 25834147 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-15-0134]
- 7 Kondo Y, Issa JP. DNA methylation profiling in cancer. *Expert Rev Mol Med* 2010; **12**: e23 [PMID: 20663272 DOI: 10.1017/S1462399410001559]
- 8 Lessi F, Beggs A, de Palo M, Anti M, Macarone Palmieri R, Francesconi S, Gomes V, Bevilacqua G, Tomlinson I, Segditsas S. Down-regulation of serum/glucocorticoid regulated kinase 1 in colorectal tumours is largely independent of promoter hypermethylation. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13840 [PMID: 21079778 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0013840]
- 9 Yagi K, Akagi K, Hayashi H, Nagae G, Tsuji S, Isagawa T, Midorikawa Y, Nishimura Y, Sakamoto H, Seto Y, Aburatani H, Kaneda A. Three DNA methylation epigenotypes in human colorectal cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 21-33 [PMID: 20028768 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2006]
- 10 Beggs AD, Jones A, El-Bahrawy M, Abulafi M, Hodgson SV, Tomlinson IP. Whole-genome methylation analysis of benign and malignant colorectal tumours. *J Pathol* 2013; **229**: 697-704 [PMID: 23096130 DOI: 10.1002/path.4132]
- 11 Toiyama Y, Okugawa Y, Goel A. DNA methylation and microRNA biomarkers for noninvasive detection of gastric and colorectal cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2014; **455**: 43-57 [PMID: 25128828 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2014.08.001]
- 12 Song L, Li Y. *SEPT9*: A Specific Circulating Biomarker for Colorectal Cancer. *Adv Clin Chem* 2015; **72**: 171-204 [PMID: 26471083 DOI: 10.1016/bs.acc.2015.07.004]
- 13 Tucker KL. Methylated cytosine and the brain: a new base for neuroscience. *Neuron* 2001; **30**: 649-652 [PMID: 11430798 DOI: 10.1016/S0896-6273(01)00325-7]
- 14 McIlhatton MA, Burrows JF, Donaghy PG, Chanduloy S, Johnston PG, Russell SE. Genomic organization, complex splicing pattern and expression of a human septin gene on chromosome 17q25.3. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 5930-5939 [PMID: 11593400 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1204752]
- 15 McDade SS, Hall PA, Russell SE. Translational control of *SEPT9* isoforms is perturbed in disease. *Hum Mol Genet* 2007; **16**: 742-752 [PMID: 17468182 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/ddm003]
- 16 Peterson EA, Stanbery L, Li C, Kocak H, Makarova O, Petty EM. *SEPT9_i1* and genomic instability: mechanistic insights and relevance to tumorigenesis. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 2011; **50**: 940-949 [PMID: 21910160 DOI: 10.1002/gcc.20916]

- 17 **Kurosu T**, Tsuji K, Ohki M, Miki T, Yamamoto M, Kakihana K, Koyama T, Taniguchi S, Miura O. A variant-type MLL/SEPT9 fusion transcript in adult de novo acute monocytic leukemia (M5b) with t(11;17)(q23;q25). *Int J Hematol* 2008; **88**: 192-196 [PMID: 18642054 DOI: 10.1007/s12185-008-0133-0]
- 18 **Gonzalez ME**, Makarova O, Peterson EA, Privette LM, Petty EM. Up-regulation of SEPT9_v1 stabilizes c-Jun-N-terminal kinase and contributes to its pro-proliferative activity in mammary epithelial cells. *Cell Signal* 2009; **21**: 477-487 [PMID: 19071215 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2008.11.007]
- 19 **Ito H**, Iwamoto I, Morishita R, Nozawa Y, Narumiya S, Asano T, Nagata K. Possible role of Rho/Rhotekin signaling in mammalian septin organization. *Oncogene* 2005; **24**: 7064-7072 [PMID: 16007136 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1208862]
- 20 **Burrows JF**, Chanduloy S, McIlhatton MA, Nagar H, Yeates K, Donaghy P, Price J, Godwin AK, Johnston PG, Russell SE. Altered expression of the septin gene, SEPT9, in ovarian neoplasia. *J Pathol* 2003; **201**: 581-588 [PMID: 14648661 DOI: 10.1002/path.1484]
- 21 **Banister CE**. Review of Epigenetics: A Reference Manual: A book edited by Jeffrey M. Craig and Nicholas C. Wong. *Epigenetics* 2014; **7**: 963-964 [DOI: 10.4161/epi.21137]
- 22 **Tóth K**, Galamb O, Spisák S, Wichmann B, Sipos F, Valcz G, Leiszter K, Molnár B, Tulassay Z. The influence of methylated septin 9 gene on RNA and protein level in colorectal cancer. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2011; **17**: 503-509 [PMID: 21267688 DOI: 10.1007/s12253-010-9338-7]
- 23 **Payne SR**. From discovery to the clinic: the novel DNA methylation biomarker (m)SEPT9 for the detection of colorectal cancer in blood. *Epigenomics* 2010; **2**: 575-585 [PMID: 22121975 DOI: 10.2217/epi.10.35]
- 24 **Issa IA**, Noureddine M. Colorectal cancer screening: An updated review of the available options. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 5086-5096 [PMID: 28811705 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i28.5086]
- 25 **Molnár B**, Tóth K, Barták BK, Tulassay Z. Plasma methylated septin 9: a colorectal cancer screening marker. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2015; **15**: 171-184 [PMID: 25429690 DOI: 10.1586/14737159.2015.975212]
- 26 **Lamb YN**, Dhillon S. Epi proColon® 2.0 CE: A Blood-Based Screening Test for Colorectal Cancer. *Mol Diagn Ther* 2017; **21**: 225-232 [PMID: 28155091 DOI: 10.1007/s40291-017-0259-y]
- 27 **Tóth K**, Sipos F, Kalmár A, Patai AV, Wichmann B, Stoehr R, Golcher H, Schellerer V, Tulassay Z, Molnár B. Detection of methylated SEPT9 in plasma is a reliable screening method for both left- and right-sided colon cancers. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e46000 [PMID: 23049919 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0046000]
- 28 **Su XL**, Wang YF, Li SJ, Zhang F, Cui HW. High methylation of the SEPT9 gene in Chinese colorectal cancer patients. *Genet Mol Res* 2014; **13**: 2513-2520 [PMID: 24535900 DOI: 10.4238/2014.January.17.5]
- 29 **Jin P**, Kang Q, Wang X, Yang L, Yu Y, Li N, He YQ, Han X, Hang J, Zhang J, Song L, Han Y, Sheng JQ. Performance of a second-generation methylated SEPT9 test in detecting colorectal neoplasm. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 830-833 [PMID: 25471329 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12855]
- 30 **Wu D**, Zhou G, Jin P, Zhu J, Li S, Wu Q, Wang G, Sheng J, Wang J, Song L, Han X, Qian J. Detection of Colorectal Cancer Using a Simplified SEPT9 Gene Methylation Assay Is a Reliable Method for Opportunistic Screening. *J Mol Diagn* 2016; **18**: 535-545 [PMID: 27133379 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmoldx.2016.02.005]
- 31 **Church TR**, Wandell M, Lofton-Day C, Mongin SJ, Burger M, Payne SR, Castaños-Vélez E, Blumenstein BA, Rösch T, Osborn N, Snover D, Day RW, Ransohoff DF; PRESEPT Clinical Study Steering Committee, Investigators and Study Team. Prospective evaluation of methylated SEPT9 in plasma for detection of asymptomatic colorectal cancer. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 317-325 [PMID: 23408352 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-304149]
- 32 **Johnson DA**, Barclay RL, Mergener K, Weiss G, König T, Beck J, Potter NT. Plasma Septin9 versus fecal immunochemical testing for colorectal cancer screening: a prospective multicenter study. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e98238 [PMID: 24901436 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0098238]
- 33 **Ørntoft MB**, Nielsen HJ, Ørntoft TF, Andersen CL; Danish Study Group on Early Detection of Colorectal Cancer. Performance of the colorectal cancer screening marker Sept9 is influenced by age, diabetes and arthritis: a nested case-control study. *BMC Cancer* 2015; **15**: 819 [PMID: 26514170 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-015-1832-6]
- 34 **Potter NT**, Hurban P, White MN, Whitlock KD, Lofton-Day CE, Tetzner R, Koenig T, Quigley NB, Weiss G. Validation of a real-time PCR-based qualitative assay for the detection of methylated SEPT9 DNA in human plasma. *Clin Chem* 2014; **60**: 1183-1191 [PMID: 24938752 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2013.221044]
- 35 **Nian J**, Sun X, Ming S, Yan C, Ma Y, Feng Y, Yang L, Yu M, Zhang G, Wang X. Diagnostic Accuracy of Methylated SEPT9 for Blood-based Colorectal Cancer Detection: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2017; **8**: e216 [PMID: 28102859 DOI: 10.1038/ctg.2016.66]
- 36 **Tóth K**, Wasserkort R, Sipos F, Kalmár A, Wichmann B, Leiszter K, Valcz G, Juhász M, Miheller P, Patai AV, Tulassay Z, Molnár B. Detection of methylated septin 9 in tissue and plasma of colorectal patients with neoplasia and the relationship to the amount of circulating cell-free DNA. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e115415 [PMID: 25526039 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0115415]
- 37 **Lieberman DA**. Clinical practice. Screening for colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 1179-1187 [PMID: 19759380 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0902176]
- 38 **Whitlock EP**, Lin JS, Liles E, Beil TL, Fu R. Screening for colorectal cancer: a targeted, updated systematic review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Ann Intern Med* 2008; **149**: 638-658 [PMID: 18838718 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-149-9-200811040-00245]
- 39 **Lee JK**, Liles EG, Bent S, Levin TR, Corley DA. Accuracy of fecal immunochemical tests for colorectal cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 2014; **160**: 171 [PMID: 24658694 DOI: 10.7326/M13-1484]
- 40 **Song L**, Jia J, Peng X, Xiao W, Li Y. The performance of the SEPT9 gene methylation assay and a comparison with other CRC screening tests: A meta-analysis. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 3032 [PMID: 28596563 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-03321-8]
- 41 **Herbst A**, Kolligs FT. Detection of DNA hypermethylation in remote media of patients with colorectal cancer: new biomarkers for colorectal carcinoma. *Tumour Biol* 2012; **33**: 297-305 [PMID: 22362383 DOI: 10.1007/s13277-012-0346-y]
- 42 **Dong W**. Detecting plasma methylated Septin9 gene combined with fecal immunochemical test in screening colorectal cancer and adenoma in outpatients(in Chinese). *Zhongguo Yixue Wenzhai* 2016; **(2)**: 44
- 43 **Yu D**, Zhang XH, Lu XX. Study on diagnostic value of SEPT9 gene methylation in serum for colorectal cancer (in Chinese). *Linchuang Jiannan Zazhi* 2015; **33**: 687 [DOI: 10.13602/j.cnki.jcls.2015.09.12]
- 44 **Tänzer M**, Balluff B, Distler J, Hale K, Leodolter A, Röcken C, Molnar B, Schmid R, Lofton-Day C, Schuster T, Ebert MP. Performance of epigenetic markers SEPT9 and ALX4 in plasma for detection of colorectal precancerous lesions. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e9061 [PMID: 20140221 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0009061]
- 45 **Li L**, Choi JY, Lee KM, Sung H, Park SK, Oze I, Pan KF, You WC, Chen YX, Fang JY, Matsuo K, Kim WH, Yuasa Y, Kang D. DNA methylation in peripheral blood: a potential biomarker for cancer molecular epidemiology. *J Epidemiol* 2012; **22**: 384-394 [PMID: 22863985 DOI: 10.2188/jea.JE20120003]
- 46 **Ogino S**, Lochhead P, Chan AT, Nishihara R, Cho E, Wolpin BM, Meyerhardt JA, Meissner A, Schernhammer ES, Fuchs CS, Giovannucci E. Molecular pathological epidemiology of epigenetics: emerging integrative science to analyze environment, host, and disease. *Mod Pathol* 2013; **26**: 465-484 [PMID: 23307060 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2012.214]
- 47 **Song L**, Jia J, Yu H, Peng X, Xiao W, Gong Y, Zhou G, Han X, Li Y. The performance of the mSEPT9 assay is influenced by algorithm, cancer stage and age, but not sex and cancer location. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2017; **143**: 1093-1101 [PMID: 28224298 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-017-2363-0]
- 48 **Ladabaum U**, Allen J, Wandell M, Ramsey S. Colorectal cancer screening with blood-based biomarkers: cost-effectiveness of

- methylated septin 9 DNA versus current strategies. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2013; **22**: 1567-1576 [PMID: 23796793 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-13-0204]
- 49 **Ladabaum U**, Alvarez-Osorio L, Rösch T, Brueggenjuergen B. Cost-effectiveness of colorectal cancer screening in Germany: current endoscopic and fecal testing strategies versus plasma methylated Septin 9 DNA. *Endosc Int Open* 2014; **2**: E96-E104 [PMID: 26135268 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1377182]
- 50 **Sharaf RN**, Ladabaum U. Comparative effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of screening colonoscopy vs. sigmoidoscopy and alternative strategies. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 120-132 [PMID: 23247579 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.380]
- 51 **Grützmann R**, Molnar B, Pilarsky C, Habermann JK, Schlag PM, Saeger HD, Miehke S, Stolz T, Model F, Roblick UJ, Bruch HP, Koch R, Liebenberg V, Devos T, Song X, Day RH, Sledziewski AZ, Lofton-Day C. Sensitive detection of colorectal cancer in peripheral blood by septin 9 DNA methylation assay. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e3759 [PMID: 19018278 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0003759]
- 52 **Behrouz Sharif S**, Hashemzadeh S, Mousavi Ardehaie R, Eftekharsadat A, Ghojazadeh M, Mehrtash AH, Estiar MA, Teimoori-Toolabi L, Sakhinia E. Detection of aberrant methylated SEPT9 and NTRK3 genes in sporadic colorectal cancer patients as a potential diagnostic biomarker. *Oncol Lett* 2016; **12**: 5335-5343 [PMID: 28105243 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2016.5327]

P- Reviewer: Solmi R, Temraz S **S- Editor:** Chen K
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Wang CH



Vitamin D in esophageal cancer: Is there a role for chemoprevention?

Carol Roupael, Afrin Kamal, Madhusudhan R Sanaka, Prashanthi N Thota

Carol Roupael, Department of Internal Medicine, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH 44195, United States

Afrin Kamal, Madhusudhan R Sanaka, Prashanthi N Thota, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH 44195, United States

ORCID number: Carol Roupael (0000-0003-3492-2073); Afrin Kamal (0000-0001-8950-8926); Madhusudhan R Sanaka (0000-0003-2506-8602); Prashanthi N Thota (0000-0001-7179-4774).

Author contributions: All authors contributed to the conception and design, acquisition of data and drafting of manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors deny any conflict-of-interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Prashanthi N Thota, MD, Medical Director, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Cleveland Clinic, 9500 Euclid Ave, Cleveland, OH 44195, United States. thotap@ccf.org
Telephone: +1-216-4440780
Fax: +1-216-4454222

Received: October 8, 2017

Peer-review started: October 9, 2017

First decision: November 3, 2017

Revised: November 10, 2017

Accepted: December 5, 2017

Article in press: December 5, 2017

Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract

Vitamin D has emerged as a promising anti-cancer agent due to its diverse biological effects on tumor differentiation, apoptosis and suppression of cellular proliferation. Current evidence suggests a protective role of vitamin D in colon cancer. The effect of vitamin D on esophageal cancer remains controversial. Multiple studies investigated the association between vitamin D and esophageal cancer, employing different modes of assessment of vitamin D status such as serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels, vitamin D dietary intake or exposure to ultraviolet B (UVB) radiation. Genetic variations of the vitamin D receptor (VDR) gene and VDR expression in esophageal specimens have also been investigated. Ecological studies evaluating exposure to UVB radiation yielded an inverse correlation with esophageal cancer. When vitamin D dietary intake was assessed, direct association with esophageal cancer was observed. However, circulating 25-hydroxyvitamin D concentrations showed inconsistent results. In this review article, we present a detailed summary of the current data on the effects of vitamin D on various histological subtypes of esophageal cancer and their precursor lesions. Well-powered prospective studies with accurate measurement of vitamin D status are needed before chemoprevention with vitamin D is recommended, as current evidence does not support a chemopreventive role of vitamin D against esophageal cancer. Future studies looking at the incidence of esophageal cancer in patients with pre-cancerous lesions (Barrett's esophagus and squamous cell dysplasia) receiving vitamin D supplementation are needed.

Key words: Vitamin D; Vitamin D receptor; Esophageal adenocarcinoma; Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma; Genetic polymorphism

© The Author(s) 2018. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Vitamin D has emerged as a promising anti-cancer agent due to its diverse biological effects on tumor differentiation, apoptosis and suppression of cellular proliferation. Ecological studies evaluating exposure to ultraviolet B radiation yielded an inverse correlation with esophageal cancer. When vitamin D dietary intake was assessed, direct association with esophageal cancer was observed. However, circulating 25-hydroxyvitamin D concentrations showed inconsistent results.

Rouphael C, Kamal A, Sanaka MR, Thota PN. Vitamin D in esophageal cancer: Is there a role for chemoprevention? *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 23-30 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/23.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.23>

INTRODUCTION

« Sol est remediorum maximum » (The sun is the best remedy)--Pliny, the Elder.

This remark, attributed to Pliny, exemplifies the healing properties of sunlight known since ancient times^[1]. The fact that most of the beneficial effects of sunlight are mediated by vitamin D came to light by experimental studies on Rickets in the 1930s^[1,2]. Epidemiologic research in the 1980s showed that incidence and death rates for certain cancers were lower among individuals with higher exposure to sunlight^[3]. Researchers hypothesized that variation in vitamin D levels might account for this association. Since then, laboratory studies elucidated several antineoplastic properties of vitamin D such as its role in promoting cellular differentiation, decreasing cancer cell growth, stimulating apoptosis, and inhibiting angiogenesis^[4,5].

Vitamin D appears to have a protective role in colorectal and breast cancers but confirmatory data for cancers of other organs such as prostate or esophagus remains lacking^[6-9]. Esophageal cancer is a major public health concern due to increasing incidence and poor survival rates after diagnosis. Numerous studies investigated the association between vitamin D status and esophageal cancer with inconsistent results.

The aim of this review is to present the available scientific evidence for the role of vitamin D in esophageal squamous cell cancer (ESCC), esophageal adenocarcinoma (EAC) and their precursor lesions-squamous cell dysplasia and Barrett's esophagus (BE) respectively.

LITERATURE SEARCH

A PubMed search of all studies published in English from 2006 to 2016 was performed. Medical subject headings (MeSH terms) used were "vitamin D", "calcitriol", "vitamin D receptor", "sun", "sunlight",

"esophageal neoplasm", "esophageal adenocarcinoma", "Barrett's esophagus", and "esophageal squamous cell carcinoma". References of relevant articles were also reviewed and selected.

VITAMIN D METABOLISM AND ANTI-CANCER PROPERTIES

The two main sources of vitamin D are diet and solar radiation. Provitamin D in the skin is converted to previtamin D by ultraviolet B (UVB) radiation, which is then converted to vitamin D₃ (cholecalciferol) through isomerization. Vitamin D₃ is hydroxylated in the liver to form 25-hydroxycholecalciferol [25(OH)D₃]. Another hydroxylation reaction occurs in the kidneys, where 25(OH)D₃ is converted to the biologically active form 1 α ,25(OH)₂D₃ (calcitriol), involved in bone and calcium metabolism^[4]. Calcitriol also regulates its own catabolic cascade: it induces the expression of the CYP24A1 gene, which encodes the 24-hydroxylase enzyme. The latter converts 25(OH)D₃ and 1 α ,25(OH)₂D₃ to the less active metabolites 24,25(OH)D₃ and 1 α ,24,25(OH)₃D₃ respectively. This is the rate-limiting step of vitamin D catabolism^[4].

Calcitriol, thought to be the metabolite involved in the anticancer properties of vitamin D, binds to the vitamin D receptor (VDR). The calcitriol-VDR complex binds to the retinoid X receptor (RXR), forming the heterodimer VDR-RXR, which translocates to the nucleus and binds to the vitamin D response element (VDRE) on a particular gene, with subsequent transcription and translation of various proteins, including the ones involved in the vitamin D anti-carcinogenic properties, *i.e.*, anti-proliferation, apoptosis, differentiation, and angiogenesis inhibition^[4,5] (Figure 1). Calcitriol inhibits proliferation by inducing cell cycle arrest at the G₀/G₁ phase. Cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors regulate cell cycle progression and induce G₁ cell-cycle arrest. Interestingly, cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1A contains a VDRE, which accounts for the anti-proliferative effects of vitamin D^[4,10]. Apoptosis is another key mechanism in inhibiting carcinogenesis. Calcitriol induces the expression of pro-apoptotic proteins and activates caspase, a cysteine protease that mediates apoptosis. In addition to its apoptotic and anti-proliferative effects, vitamin D inhibits angiogenesis. In prostate cancer, vitamin D interrupts signaling of an angiogenic factor, interleukin 8, leading to decreased endothelial cell migration and possibly metastasis^[4].

Osteopontin and E-cadherin are two proteins induced by vitamin D with antagonistic growth regulatory activity. While osteopontin promotes cellular invasion^[11], E-cadherin suppresses cell growth by inhibiting the transcriptional activity of β -catenin, a protein that induces genes involved in promoting cell growth and proliferation^[12]. In colon adenocarcinoma, for instance, E-cadherin is preserved as opposed to low osteopontin levels^[13]. Subsequently, high levels of calcitriol would

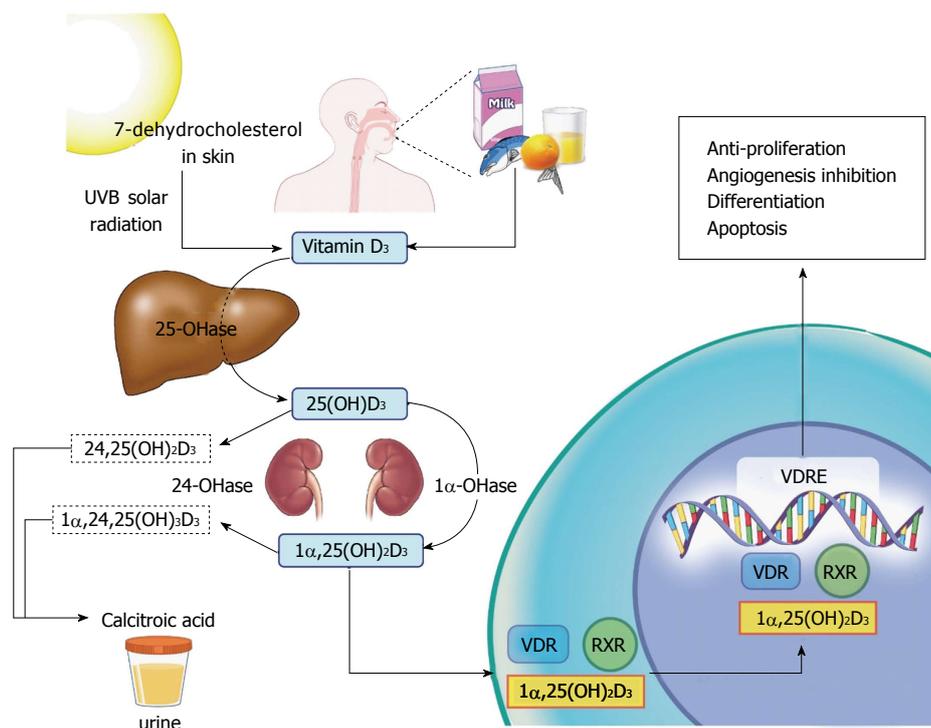


Figure 1 Vitamin D metabolism and anti-cancer properties. UVB: Ultraviolet B radiation; VDR: Vitamin D receptor; RXR: Retinoid X receptor; VDRE: Vitamin D response element; 25(OH)ase: 25-hydroxylase; 24(OH)ase: 24-hydroxylase; 1 α (OH)ase: 1 α -hydroxylase; 25(OH)D₃: 25-hydroxyvitamin D; 1 α ,25(OH)₂D₃: 1 α ,25-dihydroxyvitamin D; 1 α ,24,25(OH)₃D₃: 1 α ,24,25-trihydroxyvitamin D; 24,25(OH)₂D₃: 24,25-dihydroxyvitamin D.

lead to further E-cadherin-induced tumor suppression with low osteopontin levels, and subsequent cell growth inhibition^[14].

From an immunologic perspective, multiple cells are known to be involved in EAC and its precursor lesions, BE and reflux esophagitis: In addition to the dendritic cells and CD4 T cells, signaling pathways involved include Nfk-B, Wnt and Hedgehog pathways. Immunologically, the role of vitamin D in esophageal cancer remains inconclusive and unclear. For instance, vitamin D was shown to inhibit the Hedgehog signaling cascade which is overexpressed in BE. Similarly dendritic cells, increased in BE and EAC, are maintained in an immature form by vitamin D. On the other hand, BE is characterized by a Th2-predominant response and data suggests that 1 α ,25-hydroxyvitamin D promotes the Th2 response. In addition, vitamin D was shown to increase interleukin-4 cytokine production, which has been implicated in BE. In view of these multiple contradictory effects on neoplastic progression, the role of vitamin D in esophageal cancer needs to be evaluated^[15].

MODES OF ASSESSMENT OF VITAMIN D STATUS

Serum concentration of vitamin D seems to be the most accurate indicator of a patient's vitamin D status and is usually monitored to treat vitamin D deficiencies. More than 50 vitamin D metabolites have

been identified over the past years but only two gained particular attention: 1 α ,25(OH)₂D₃ and 25(OH)D₃. While 1 α ,25(OH)₂D₃'s half-life is around 4 h and levels are widely dependent on an individual's calcium needs, 25(OH)D₃ has a half-life of around 3 wk, reflecting more accurately a patient's vitamin D stores, and therefore widely accepted as an indicator of an individual's vitamin D status^[16]. The normal levels are considered to be 10-68 ng/mL (24.9-169.5 nmol/L) with different cut-offs in various assays and laboratories^[17]. Sunlight is a major contributor to vitamin D status. Many studies attempted to validate different UVB exposure questionnaires and found correlations ranging between 0.16 and 0.4 for vitamin D serum concentration and reported UVB exposure^[18-21]. Correlations noted were not strong however, raising the hypothesis that sun exposure alone does not explain serum vitamin D levels^[19]. Multiple studies also used dietary vitamin D intake as a surrogate of vitamin D status and showed a good correlation between dietary vitamin D intake and serum vitamin D levels. This correlation could be stronger for instance, in wintertime, when exposure to UVB radiation is reduced^[19].

Taking vitamin D dietary intake, lifetime UVB exposure and vitamin D serum concentrations into account seems to be the most accurate method to assess an individual's vitamin D status^[19]. As a matter of fact, Giovannucci *et al.*^[22] built a predictor score to assess long-term vitamin D status using multiple determining factors of vitamin D exposure including dietary and

Table 1 Studies investigating correlations between vitamin D and esophageal squamous cell dysplasia and carcinoma

Ref.	Study design/location	Vitamin D exposure/status/genetics studies	Statistical correlation
Abnet <i>et al</i> ^[27]	Cross-sectional study China	25-hydroxyvitamin D serum level	RR = 1.86, 95%CI: 1.35-2.62
Chen <i>et al</i> ^[28]	Prospective study China	25-hydroxyvitamin D serum level	ESCC in men: HR = 1.77, 95%CI: 1.16-2.70
Lipworth <i>et al</i> ^[29]	Case-control study Italy	Vitamin D dietary intake	ESCC: OR = 0.58, 95%CI: 0.39-0.86
Tran <i>et al</i> ^[30]	Case-control study Australia	Ultraviolet B radiation	ESCC: No association
Wang <i>et al</i> ^[24]	Case-control study China	Genetic polymorphisms	ESCC: No association

ESCC: Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma; OR: Odds ratio; RR: Relative risk; HR: Hazard ratio; CI: Confidence interval.

supplementary vitamin D intake, geographic residence, race, physical activity and body mass index^[22].

On another note, two genome wide association studies of vitamin D levels have been conducted and common genetic variants of genes involved in vitamin D metabolism pathways were identified^[23,24]. Subsequently, multiple single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) were investigated in an attempt to find correlations with esophageal cancer^[24,25].

ESOPHAGEAL CANCER AND VITAMIN D

Esophageal cancer encompasses two histological subtypes: ESCC and EAC, which differ epidemiologically, by risk factors and outcomes. ESCC is the most common esophageal cancer worldwide with an increased incidence in developing countries. Esophageal squamous dysplasia is the histologic precursor of ESCC. Developed countries witness a higher prevalence of EAC^[26], which is commonly related to chronic acid reflux exposure, with BE being the main risk factor for EAC. Potential associations of vitamin D have been investigated in both histological subtypes of esophageal cancer as presented below.

Esophageal squamous cell dysplasia

Only one study based on the Linxian population in China investigated the role of vitamin D in esophageal squamous cell dysplasia and found a linear association between vitamin D levels and development of squamous dysplasia: 230 out of 724 patients had esophageal squamous dysplasia. Patients diagnosed with esophageal squamous dysplasia had higher median levels of 25(OH)D₃ levels compared to controls (36.5 nmol/L vs 31.5 nmol/L, $P = 0.0004$)^[27].

Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma

Three studies evaluated vitamin D status and ESCC with diverging results depending on mode of assessment of Vitamin D status^[28-30] (Table 1). While one study in China concluded a direct correlation between ESCC and measured serum 25(OH)D₃ concentrations^[28], another study conducted in Italy noted an inverse association between increased dietary vitamin D intake and

ESCC^[29]. The third one, done in Australia, found no association between ESCC and lifetime UVB radiation exposure^[30].

The study from China was population-based and included 2018 participants, out of which 545 developed ESCC, with an overall trend towards higher concentrations in serum 25(OH)D₃ in those who developed cancers. Multivariate analysis demonstrated increased risk with higher 25(OH)D₃ values (4th quartile hazard ratio (HR): 1.30, 95%CI: 0.97-1.73, $P = 0.013$). When stratified by gender, ESCC risk remained increased in men with higher vitamin D levels (4th quartile HR = 1.77, 95%CI: 1.16-2.70, $P = 0.003$) but not in women. These conclusions could not be extrapolated to other populations due to overall low vitamin D levels and high rate of exposure to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in this study population, with the latter factor placing them at higher risk for neoplasia^[28]. It is worthwhile noting however, that pre-neoplastic lesions with squamous cell dysplasia were also found to have an E-cadherin/osteopontin disequilibrium, with E-cadherin suppression and osteopontin up-regulation leading to increased risk of cell growth, proliferation and subsequently malignant transformation with higher calcitriol levels^[14].

The study from Italy was a case-control study with 304 patients and investigated the association between dietary vitamin D intake over the prior two years and ESCC^[29]. In ESCC patients, an inverse relationship was noted between vitamin D intake and esophageal neoplasia. The highest tertile corresponded to > 3.5 µg/d with a risk reduction of around 40% compared to lowest tertile (< 2.51 µg/d).

The last case-control study from Australia assessed UVB exposure and prevalence of ESCC. No relationship was observed between lifetime UVB radiation and ESCC (OR = 0.94, 95%CI: 0.82-1.09) in contrast to EAC and esophago-gastric junction adenocarcinoma^[30].

An association between SNPs in the genes involved in vitamin D pathway and ESCC was also evaluated: Wang *et al*^[24] investigated 12 SNPs in four genes known to be part of the vitamin D pathway: vitamin D binding protein, 7-dehydrocholesterol reductase, 25-hydroxylase and 24-hydroxylase or CYP24A1.

SNPs related to vitamin D levels were not found to be associated with ESCC risk.

The rate-limiting step of vitamin D synthesis was also investigated in regards to ESCC. In one study of 42 patients with esophageal cancer of which 39 had ESCC, CYP24 gene expression was assessed by semi-quantitative RT-PCR assay. Cases with lower CYP24 expression ($n = 25$) had significantly higher survival rate compared to patients with increased CYP24 expression ($n = 17$, $P < 0.05$), making of CYP24 a "candidate oncogene" that might serve as a biomarker of increased ESCC risk^[31].

Barrett's esophagus

Vitamin D dietary intake and supplementation have been studied with regards to BE. An Irish study evaluated the association between vitamin D intake assessed *via* food questionnaires, among patients with BE ($n = 224$), reflux esophagitis ($n = 230$) and EAC ($n = 227$), compared to 260 healthy controls^[32]. Vitamin D intake was not found to be associated with reflux esophagitis or BE. After adjusting for reflux symptoms however, a positive correlation emerged between patients with BE and the highest tertile of dairy products intake (≥ 493.2 g/d) (OR = 1.94, 95%CI: 1.01-3.71). This could imply that patients are consuming dairy products to treat their symptoms, rather than an actual association with BE, as proposed by the authors^[32]. In a clinical trial studying the effect of vitamin D supplementation on BE, 3 of the first 10 evaluable patients had BE with high-grade dysplasia. After 2 wk of vitamin D supplementation (50000 units weekly), 2 out of 3 patients with BE had regression to low-grade dysplasia on pathology, suggesting a potential benefit of vitamin D in BE^[33].

Three studies assessed VDR expression in BE^[25,34,35]. Trowbridge *et al.*^[34] compared VDR expression in normal esophagus, BE and normal gastric tissue, by immunofluorescent staining. No VDR expression was detected in normal squamous mucosa in contrast to normal gastric mucosa and BE mucosa. This suggests a restriction of VDR expression to columnar epithelium and glandular structures, as well as potential chemopreventive effects of vitamin D in patients with BE. Those findings were reproducible in a Dutch study where VDR mRNA had a 2-fold higher expression in BE epithelium compared to squamous epithelium^[25]. In another study comprising 37 patients with BE and 107 with EAC, VDR expression was found to be increased in both BE (95%) and EAC (79%), but significantly higher in BE^[35]. This implies that VDR might be involved early on in EAC development.

Esophageal adenocarcinoma

To date, the studies that examined the association between vitamin D status and EAC showed inconsistent results^[30,32,36-38]. Several of these studies were either population-based or ecologic studies with lack

of information on 25(OH)D₃ levels either before or after EAC diagnosis, and therefore relied on various other measures of vitamin D status such as sunlight exposure or dietary vitamin D intake.

The studies that examined the association between vitamin D and EAC are summarized in Table 2. Only 2 studies evaluated the association of serum 25(OH)D₃ concentrations and EAC. Abnet *et al.*^[36], in a nested case-control study, examined the relationship between upper gastrointestinal cancers and circulating serum 25(OH)D₃ levels. No significant association was noted with EAC when comparing patients with highest and lowest categories of 25(OH)D₃ levels (50-75 nmol/L vs < 25 nmol/L, OR = 1.63, 95%CI: 0.25-2.12)^[36]. Another US-based study also did not show any association between 25(OH)D₃ levels and incidence or prevalence of EAC among patients with BE^[38]. Giovannucci *et al.*^[22] used a predicted 25(OH)D₃ level derived by modeling various factors that can affect vitamin D status such as UVB, dietary vitamin d intake, supplementation, skin pigmentation and body mass index. A 25nmol/L increment in predicted vitamin D resulted in 17% reduction in total cancer incidence and 29% reduction in cancer mortality. However, the study did not mention the rates of EAC in particular, although there was an inverse association with esophageal cancer incidence (RR = 0.37, 95%CI: 0.17-0.80)^[22].

Data from animal models have shown that dietary vitamin D is associated with tumor inhibition and reduction of tumor growth, especially in colorectal cancer and breast cancer^[39-41]. However, the epidemiologic studies for EAC have been contradictory^[32,37,42]. In fact, in an Irish study, patients with the highest tertile of vitamin D intake had increased risk of EAC compared to the lowest tertile (OR = 1.99, 95%CI: 1.03-3.86)^[42]. In another population-based study in the US, no association was found between vitamin D intake and EAC (OR = 1.10, 95%CI: 0.86-1.40)^[37]. Similar results were found in a meta-analysis that concluded that higher intake of vitamin D results in a non-significant increase in the risk of EAC (OR = 1.45, 95%CI: 0.65-2.24)^[5]. The current evidence hence fails to establish a relationship between vitamin D intake and EAC.

The other significant contributor of vitamin D status is sunlight exposure. To date only one study examined UVB exposure as a risk factor for EAC^[30]. Patients with EAC were 41% less likely to have high levels of lifetime ambient UVB radiation compared to population controls (OR = 0.59, 95%CI: 0.35-0.99). Although the study did not check serum vitamin D levels to establish the diagnosis of vitamin D deficiency, the study results were adjusted for several potential confounders such as body mass index, reflux symptoms, education, smoking, alcohol and Helicobacter pylori infection, following which the inverse association remained between UVB and EAC. The same inverse association was seen between number of nevi, which is a

Table 2 Studies investigating correlations between vitamin D and Barrett's esophagus or esophageal adenocarcinoma

Ref.	Study design/location	Vitamin D exposure/status/genetics studies	Statistical correlation	Other
Tran <i>et al</i> ^[30]	Case-control study Australia	Cumulative ambient ultraviolet B radiation	EAC risk: OR = 0.59, 95%CI: 0.35-0.99 EAC risk for every 107 J/m ² increase in radiation: OR = 0.82, 95%CI: 0.72-0.93	
Mulholland <i>et al</i> ^[32]	Case-control study Ireland	Vitamin D dietary intake <i>via</i> food questionnaire	EAC risk: OR = 1.99, 95%CI: 1.03-3.86 BE risk: no association	
Mayne <i>et al</i> ^[37]	Case-control study United States	Vitamin D dietary intake	EAC: no association	
Thota <i>et al</i> ^[38]	Retrospective study of a prospectively collected database United States	25-hydroxyvitamin D serum levels	EAC: no association BE with HGD: no association	
Abnet <i>et al</i> ^[36]	Nested case-control study United States, Finland, China	25-hydroxyvitamin D serum levels	EAC: no association	
Trowbridge <i>et al</i> ^[43]	Retrospective study United States	Vitamin D receptor expression	Not assessed	VDR expression decreased with tumor dedifferentiation VDR expression lower in neoadjuvant therapy responders
Trowbridge <i>et al</i> ^[34]	Retrospective study United States	Vitamin D receptor expression	Not assessed	VDR expression increased in Barrett's esophagus
Zhou <i>et al</i> ^[35]	Descriptive United States	Vitamin D receptor expression	Not assessed	VDR expressed in 95% of BE (35/37) VDR expressed in 78% of EAC (86/109)
Janmaat <i>et al</i> ^[25]	Cohort study Netherlands	Vitamin D receptor polymorphisms	EAC: 2 GT copies: OR = 0.50, 95%CI: 0.27-0.96 BE: 2 GT copies: OR = 0.46, 95%CI: 0.26-0.80	VDR expression is 2 fold higher in BE as compared to normal esophagus
Chang <i>et al</i> ^[45]	Case-control study Ireland	Vitamin D receptor polymorphisms	EAC: rs2238139 TT: OR 0.26, 95% CI: 0.07-0.93 EAC: rs2107301 TT: OR = 0.19, 95%CI: 0.06-0.67	
Zgaga <i>et al</i> ^[5]	Meta-analysis United States	Ultraviolet B radiation Vitamin D intake Vitamin D serum levels	Vitamin D level and overall esophageal cancer: OR = 1.39, 95%CI: 1.03-1.74 Vitamin D intake and EAC: OR = 1.45, 95%CI: 0.65-2.24	

EAC: Esophageal adenocarcinoma; BE: Barrett's esophagus; HGD: High-grade dysplasia; VDR: Vitamin D receptor; OR: Odds ratio; CI: Confidence interval.

surrogate marker of sun exposure, and EAC, further supporting the hypothesis of sun exposure and tumor inhibition^[30].

In an attempt to find biomarkers predicting the malignant potential of an esophageal lesion, response to treatment and prognosis, investigators have evaluated the genetics involved in the vitamin D pathway in regards to EAC. The focus has mainly been on the VDR expression in different tissues as well as SNPs of some of the genes in the vitamin D signaling pathway.

Trowbridge *et al*^[43] looked at VDR expression using immunofluorescence in 15 biopsy specimens of patients with EAC. Greater average mean fluorescence, a reflection of higher VDR expression, was observed for moderately and well-differentiated tumors (111.7) compared to poorly differentiated tumors (98.7), which highlights the anti-carcinogenic properties of vitamin D through VDR, particularly differentiation. This was also established in colon adenocarcinoma where decreased

VDR expression was noted with progressive de-differentiation^[44].

Apart from assessing VDR expression level, VDR polymorphisms in EAC have also been investigated. Vitamin D exerts many of its biological effects by binding to VDR and VDR gene polymorphisms may alter mRNA stability and transcriptional activity.

In an Irish population-based case-control study, 224 cases of EAC were identified and 256 controls were selected^[45]. Variants in the VDR gene were explored and TT homozygotes at rs2238139 and rs2107301 SNPs seemed to have a reduced risk of EAC compared to individual with CC alleles at those sites (OR = 0.26, 95%CI: 0.007, 0.93 and OR = 0.19, 95%CI: 0.06-0.67, respectively). However when permutation analyses were done, there was no significant association between EAC and VDR polymorphisms^[45]. A later study identified two SNPs of the VDR gene associated with reduced risk of reflux esophagitis, BE and EAC^[25]. Patients with the rs1989969 T/rs2238135

G haplotype had a lower risk for reflux esophagitis (OR = 0.48, 95%CI: 0.28-0.81), BE (OR 0.46, 95%CI: 0.26-0.80) as well as EAC (OR = 0.50, 95%CI: 0.27-0.96). Both of these haplotypes appear to be associated with reduced VDR expression. The authors studied the mechanism by which those SNPs work and discovered that the rs1989969 T allele lead to the appearance of a GATA-1 transcription factor binding site, which is known to be a negative transcriptional regulator. This haplotype could be exerting its direct biological effects on the rate of reflux esophagitis with a subsequent decreased rates of BE and EAC^[25]. Those findings could have significant clinical implications in terms of identifying patients who would benefit from vitamin D chemoprevention.

CONCLUSION

In summary, data continues to be inconsistent and firm conclusions regarding the chemopreventive role of vitamin D in esophageal cancer cannot be made. While vitamin D studies struggle with measuring the combined influences of dietary vitamin D intake and sunlight, vitamin D serum levels are a single point measure in time, and levels are known to change throughout the year. As a matter of fact, while an inverse association exists between UVB radiation and EAC, this was not observed with vitamin D intake. Serum 25(OH) D₃ levels appear to be associated with higher risk of ESCC especially in Chinese population. No association was noted however between vitamin D serum levels and EAC. Studies have been population-specific making it difficult to apply findings to other populations. Multiple genetic studies provided new grounds for future investigations such as SNPs leading to the appearance of transcription sites with known negative regulatory roles. VDR expression is increased in BE as compared to EAC or normal squamous epithelium, making of VDR a potential biomarker in selecting those who could benefit from vitamin D as a chemopreventive agent. Well-powered prospective studies with accurate measurement of vitamin D status are needed before chemoprevention with vitamin D is recommended, as current evidence does not support a chemopreventive role of vitamin D against esophageal cancer. Future studies looking at the incidence of esophageal cancer in patients with pre-cancerous lesions (BE and squamous cell dysplasia) receiving vitamin D supplementation are needed.

REFERENCES

- 1 Cleaves HC. Sunlight and heliotherapy. *JAMA* 1925; **84**: 2021-2022 [DOI: 10.1001/jama.1925.02660520049032]
- 2 The Photo-activity of substances curative of Rickets-A remarkable discovery. *JAMA* 1924; **83**: 1169-1170 [DOI: 10.1001/jama.1924.02660150053018]
- 3 Garland CF, Garland FC. Do sunlight and vitamin D reduce the likelihood of colon cancer? *Int J Epidemiol* 1980; **9**: 227-231

- [PMID: 7440046 DOI: 10.1093/ije/9.3.227]
- 4 Deeb KK, Trump DL, Johnson CS. Vitamin D signalling pathways in cancer: potential for anticancer therapeutics. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2007; **7**: 684-700 [PMID: 17721433 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2196]
- 5 Zgaga L, O'Sullivan F, Cantwell MM, Murray LJ, Thota PN, Coleman HG. Markers of Vitamin D Exposure and Esophageal Cancer Risk: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2016; **25**: 877-886 [PMID: 27030602 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-15-1162]
- 6 Meyer HE, Røsbjerg TE, Bjørge T, Brustad M, Blomhoff R. Vitamin D, season, and risk of prostate cancer: a nested case-control study within Norwegian health studies. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2013; **97**: 147-154 [PMID: 23193007 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.112.039222]
- 7 Giovannucci E. Epidemiological evidence for vitamin D and colorectal cancer. *J Bone Miner Res* 2007; **22** Suppl 2: V81-V85 [PMID: 18290728 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.07s206]
- 8 van der Rhee H, Coebergh JW, de Vries E. Is prevention of cancer by sun exposure more than just the effect of vitamin D? A systematic review of epidemiological studies. *Eur J Cancer* 2013; **49**: 1422-1436 [PMID: 23237739 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2012.11.001]
- 9 Bilinski K, Boyages J. Association between 25-hydroxyvitamin D concentration and breast cancer risk in an Australian population: an observational case-control study. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2013; **137**: 599-607 [PMID: 23239153 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-012]
- 10 Moreno J, Krishnan AV, Feldman D. Molecular mechanisms mediating the anti-proliferative effects of Vitamin D in prostate cancer. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 2005; **97**: 31-36 [PMID: 16024246 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsbmb.2005.06.012]
- 11 Kurisetty VV, Johnston PG, Johnston N, Erwin P, Crowe P, Fernig DG, Campbell FC, Anderson IP, Rudland PS, El-Tanani MK. RAN GTPase is an effector of the invasive/metastatic phenotype induced by osteopontin. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 7139-7149 [PMID: 18794800 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2008.325]
- 12 Stockinger A, Eger A, Wolf J, Beug H, Foisner R. E-cadherin regulates cell growth by modulating proliferation-dependent beta-catenin transcriptional activity. *J Cell Biol* 2001; **154**: 1185-1196 [PMID: 11564756 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200104036]
- 13 Rohde F, Rimkus C, Friederichs J, Rosenberg R, Marthen C, Doll D, Holzmann B, Siewert JR, Janssen KP. Expression of osteopontin, a target gene of de-regulated Wnt signaling, predicts survival in colon cancer. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **121**: 1717-1723 [PMID: 17565744 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22868]
- 14 Campbell FC, Xu H, El-Tanani M, Crowe P, Bingham V. The yin and yang of vitamin D receptor (VDR) signaling in neoplastic progression: operational networks and tissue-specific growth control. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2010; **79**: 1-9 [PMID: 19737544 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2009.09.005]
- 15 Trowbridge R, Kizer RT, Mittal SK, Agrawal DK. 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D in the pathogenesis of Barrett's esophagus and esophageal adenocarcinoma. *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 2013; **9**: 517-533 [PMID: 23730883 DOI: 10.1586/eci.13.38]
- 16 Zerwekh JE. Blood biomarkers of vitamin D status. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2008; **87**: 1087S-1091S [PMID: 18400739]
- 17 Kratz A, Ferraro M, Sluss PM, Lewandrowski KB. Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Weekly clinicopathological exercises. Laboratory reference values. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 1548-1563 [PMID: 15470219 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcpc049016]
- 18 van der Mei IA, Blizzard L, Ponsonby AL, Dwyer T. Validity and reliability of adult recall of past sun exposure in a case-control study of multiple sclerosis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2006; **15**: 1538-1544 [PMID: 16896046 DOI: 10.1158/1055-]
- 19 Millen AE, Bodnar LM. Vitamin D assessment in population-based studies: a review of the issues. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2008; **87**: 1102S-1105S [PMID: 18400742]
- 20 Jones G, Dwyer T, Hynes KL, Parameswaran V, Greenaway TM. Vitamin D insufficiency in adolescent males in Southern Tasmania: prevalence, determinants, and relationship to bone turnover markers. *Osteoporos Int* 2005; **16**: 636-641 [PMID: 15448989 DOI: 10.1007/s00198-004-1733-z]
- 21 Brot C, Vestergaard P, Kolthoff N, Gram J, Hermann AP, Sø-

- rensen OH. Vitamin D status and its adequacy in healthy Danish perimenopausal women: relationships to dietary intake, sun exposure and serum parathyroid hormone. *Br J Nutr* 2001; **86** Suppl 1: S97-S103 [PMID: 11520426]
- 22 **Giovannucci E**, Liu Y, Rimm EB, Hollis BW, Fuchs CS, Stampfer MJ, Willett WC. Prospective study of predictors of vitamin D status and cancer incidence and mortality in men. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2006; **98**: 451-459 [PMID: 16595781 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djj101]
- 23 **Ahn J**, Yu K, Stolzenberg-Solomon R, Simon KC, McCullough ML, Gallicchio L, Jacobs EJ, Ascherio A, Helzlsouer K, Jacobs KB, Li Q, Weinstein SJ, Purdue M, Virtamo J, Horst R, Wheeler W, Chanock S, Hunter DJ, Hayes RB, Kraft P, Albanes D. Genome-wide association study of circulating vitamin D levels. *Hum Mol Genet* 2010; **19**: 2739-2745 [PMID: 20418485 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/ddq155]
- 24 **Wang JB**, Dawsey SM, Fan JH, Freedman ND, Tang ZZ, Ding T, Hu N, Wang LM, Wang CY, Su H, Qiao YL, Goldstein AM, Taylor PR, Abnet CC. Common genetic variants related to vitamin D status are not associated with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma risk in China. *Cancer Epidemiol* 2015; **39**: 157-159 [PMID: 25631780 DOI: 10.1016/j.canep.2014.12.013]
- 25 **Janmaat VT**, Van De Winkel A, Peppelenbosch MP, Spaander MC, Uitterlinden AG, Pourfarzad F, Tilanus HW, Rygiel AM, Moons LM, Arp PP, Krishnadath KK, Kuipers EJ, Van Der Laan LJ. Vitamin D Receptor Polymorphisms Are Associated with Reduced Esophageal Vitamin D Receptor Expression and Reduced Esophageal Adenocarcinoma Risk. *Mol Med* 2015; **21**: 346-354 [PMID: 25910066 DOI: 10.2119/molmed.2012.00336]
- 26 **Napier KJ**, Scheerer M, Misra S. Esophageal cancer: A Review of epidemiology, pathogenesis, staging workup and treatment modalities. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2014; **6**: 112-120 [PMID: 24834141 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v6.i5.112]
- 27 **Abnet CC**, Chen W, Dawsey SM, Wei WQ, Roth MJ, Liu B, Lu N, Taylor PR, Qiao YL. Serum 25(OH)-vitamin D concentration and risk of esophageal squamous dysplasia. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2007; **16**: 1889-1893 [PMID: 17855710 DOI: 10.1158/1055]
- 28 **Chen W**, Dawsey SM, Qiao YL, Mark SD, Dong ZW, Taylor PR, Zhao P, Abnet CC. Prospective study of serum 25(OH)-vitamin D concentration and risk of oesophageal and gastric cancers. *Br J Cancer* 2007; **97**: 123-128 [PMID: 17551495 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603834]
- 29 **Lipworth L**, Rossi M, McLaughlin JK, Negri E, Talamini R, Levi F, Franceschi S, La Vecchia C. Dietary vitamin D and cancers of the oral cavity and esophagus. *Ann Oncol* 2009; **20**: 1576-1581 [PMID: 19487490 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdp036]
- 30 **Tran B**, Lucas R, Kimlin M, Whiteman D, Neale R; Australian Cancer Study. Association between ambient ultraviolet radiation and risk of esophageal cancer. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1803-1813 [PMID: 23032986 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.329]
- 31 **Mimori K**, Tanaka Y, Yoshinaga K, Masuda T, Yamashita K, Okamoto M, Inoue H, Mori M. Clinical significance of the overexpression of the candidate oncogene CYP24 in esophageal cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2004; **15**: 236-241 [PMID: 14760115]
- 32 **Mulholland HG**, Murray LJ, Anderson LA, Cantwell MM; FINBAR study group. Vitamin D, calcium and dairy intake, and risk of oesophageal adenocarcinoma and its precursor conditions. *Br J Nutr* 2011; **106**: 732-741 [PMID: 21736847 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114511000742]
- 33 **Cummings LC**, Willis J, Cooper GS, Bednarchik B, Markowitz S, Chak A. Mo1926 Effects of Vitamin D supplementation on Barrett's esophagus. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: S696 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(13)62578-0]
- 34 **Trowbridge R**, Mittal SK, Sharma P, Hunter WJ, Agrawal DK. Vitamin D receptor expression in the mucosal tissue at the gastroesophageal junction. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2012; **93**: 246-249 [PMID: 22664272 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexmp.2012.05.007]
- 35 **Zhou Z**, Xia Y, Bandla S, Zakharov V, Wu S, Peters J, Godfrey TE, Sun J. Vitamin D receptor is highly expressed in precancerous lesions and esophageal adenocarcinoma with significant sex difference. *Hum Pathol* 2014; **45**: 1744-1751 [PMID: 24951052 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2014.02.029]
- 36 **Abnet CC**, Chen Y, Chow WH, Gao YT, Helzlsouer KJ, Le Marchand L, McCullough ML, Shikany JM, Virtamo J, Weinstein SJ, Xiang YB, Yu K, Zheng W, Albanes D, Arslan AA, Campbell DS, Campbell PT, Hayes RB, Horst RL, Kolonel LN, Nomura AM, Purdue MP, Snyder K, Shu XO. Circulating 25-hydroxyvitamin D and risk of esophageal and gastric cancer: Cohort Consortium Vitamin D Pooling Project of Rarer Cancers. *Am J Epidemiol* 2010; **172**: 94-106 [PMID: 20562192 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kwq121]
- 37 **Mayne ST**, Risch HA, Dubrow R, Chow WH, Gammon MD, Vaughan TL, Farrow DC, Schoenberg JB, Stanford JL, Ahsan H, West AB, Rotterdam H, Blot WJ, Fraumeni JF Jr. Nutrient intake and risk of subtypes of esophageal and gastric cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2001; **10**: 1055-1062 [PMID: 11588131]
- 38 **Thota PN**, Kistangari G, Singh P, Cummings L, Hajifathalian K, Lopez R, Sanaka MR. Serum 25-Hydroxyvitamin D Levels and the Risk of Dysplasia and Esophageal Adenocarcinoma in Patients with Barrett's Esophagus. *Dig Dis Sci* 2016; **61**: 247-254 [PMID: 26233550 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-015-3823-5]
- 39 **Newmark HL**, Yang K, Kurihara N, Fan K, Augenlicht LH, Lipkin M. Western-style diet-induced colonic tumors and their modulation by calcium and vitamin D in C57Bl/6 mice: a preclinical model for human sporadic colon cancer. *Carcinogenesis* 2009; **30**: 88-92 [PMID: 19017685 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgn229]
- 40 **Newmark HL**, Yang K, Lipkin M, Kopelovich L, Liu Y, Fan K, Shinozaki H. A Western-style diet induces benign and malignant neoplasms in the colon of normal C57Bl/6 mice. *Carcinogenesis* 2001; **22**: 1871-1875 [PMID: 11698351]
- 41 **Xue L**, Lipkin M, Newmark H, Wang J. Influence of dietary calcium and vitamin D on diet-induced epithelial cell hyperproliferation in mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999; **91**: 176-181 [PMID: 9923860]
- 42 **O'Brien MM**, Kiely M, Harrington KE, Robson PJ, Strain JJ, Flynn A. The North/South Ireland Food Consumption Survey: vitamin intakes in 18-64-year-old adults. *Public Health Nutr* 2001; **4**: 1069-1079 [PMID: 11820920]
- 43 **Trowbridge R**, Sharma P, Hunter WJ, Agrawal DK. Vitamin D receptor expression and neoadjuvant therapy in esophageal adenocarcinoma. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2012; **93**: 147-153 [PMID: 22546272 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexmp.2012.04.018]
- 44 **Matusiak D**, Murillo G, Carroll RE, Mehta RG, Benya RV. Expression of vitamin D receptor and 25-hydroxyvitamin D3-1{alpha}-hydroxylase in normal and malignant human colon. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2005; **14**: 2370-2376 [PMID: 16214919 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-05-0257]
- 45 **Chang CK**, Mulholland HG, Cantwell MM, Anderson LA, Johnston BT, McKnight AJ, Thompson PD, Watson RG, Murray LJ; FINBAR study group. Vitamin d receptor gene variants and esophageal adenocarcinoma risk: a population-based case-control study. *J Gastrointest Cancer* 2012; **43**: 512-517 [PMID: 21948293 DOI: 10.1007/s12029-011-9322-9]

P- Reviewer: Hashimoto N, Nagahara H, Su CC **S- Editor:** Gong ZM
L- Editor: Logan S **E- Editor:** Wang CH



Retrospective Study

Impact of duration of adjuvant chemotherapy in radically resected patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer

Qi-Wei Wang, Xiao-Tian Zhang, Ming Lu, Lin Shen

Qi-Wei Wang, Medical Oncology, Department of Gastrointestinal Cancer, Liaoning Cancer Hospital and Institute, Shenyang 110042, Liaoning Province, China

Xiao-Tian Zhang, Ming Lu, Lin Shen, Key Laboratory of Carcinogenesis and Translational Research (Ministry of Education), Department of Gastrointestinal Oncology, Peking University Cancer Hospital and Institute, Beijing 100142, China

ORCID number: Qi-Wei Wang (0000-0002-3852-3101); Xiao-Tian Zhang (0000-0001-5267-7871); Ming Lu (0000-0002-9360-473X); Lin Shen (0000-0002-1205-049X).

Author contributions: Wang QW drafted the article and contributed to data processing; Zhang XT and Shen L designed research and contributed to the statistical assessment; Lu M participated in the clinical assessment of the cases.

Institutional review board statement: This clinical research report submitted by Dr Xiaotian Zhang. The investigation project has been examined and certified by Ethics Committee of Beijing Cancer Hospital on July 1, 2015.

Informed consent statement: Due to the retrospective nature of the study, informed consent was waived by the Ethics Committee of Beijing Cancer Hospital committee.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The author declare that they have no financial and personal relationships with other people or organizations that can inappropriately influence our work, there is no professional or other personal interest of any nature or kind in any product.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Correspondence to: Xiao-Tian Zhang, MD, Professor, Key Laboratory of Carcinogenesis and Translational Research (Ministry of Education), Department of Gastrointestinal Oncology, Peking University Cancer Hospital and Institute, 52 Fucheng Road, Haidian District, Beijing 100142, China. zhangxiaotianmed@126.com
Telephone: +86-10-88196561
Fax: +86-10-88196561

Received: September 6, 2017

Peer-review started: September 7, 2017

First decision: October 9, 2017

Revised: November 24, 2017

Accepted: December 13, 2017

Article in press: December 13, 2017

Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract**AIM**

To provide evidence regarding the postoperative treatment of patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer, for which guidelines have not been established.

METHODS

Patients who had undergone curative resection between 1996 and 2014 with a pathological stage of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 for gastric cancer were retrospectively analyzed; staging was based on the 7th edition of the American Joint Committee on Cancer staging system. The clinicopathological characteristics, administration of adjuvant chemotherapy, and patterns of recurrence were studied. Univariate and multivariate analyses of prognostic factors were conducted. The chemotherapeutic agents mainly included fluorouracil, platinum and taxanes, used as monotherapy, doublet, or triplet regimens. Patterns of first recurrence were categorized as locoregional

recurrence, peritoneal dissemination, or distant metastasis.

RESULTS

The 5-year overall survival (OS) of the whole group ($n = 176$) was 16.8%, and the median OS was 25.7 mo (95%CI: 20.9-30.5). Lymphovascular invasion and a node positive rate (NPR) ≥ 0.8 were associated with a poor prognosis ($P = 0.01$ and $P = 0.048$, respectively). One hundred forty-seven (83.5%) of the 176 patients eventually experienced recurrence; the most common pattern of the first recurrence was distant metastasis. The prognosis was best for patients with locoregional recurrence and worst for those with peritoneal dissemination. Twelve (6.8%) of the 176 patients did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy, while 164 (93.2%) patients received adjuvant chemotherapy. Combined chemotherapy, including doublet and triplet regimens, was associated with a better prognosis than monotherapy, with no significant difference in 5-year OS (17.5% *vs* 0%, $P = 0.613$). The triplet regimen showed no significant survival benefit compared with the doublet regimen for 5-year OS (18.5% *vs* 17.4%, $P = 0.661$). Thirty-nine (22.1%) patients received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months; the median OS in patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months was 40.2 mo (95%CI: 30.6-48.2), significantly longer than the 21.6 mo (95%CI: 19.1-24.0) in patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy for less than six months ($P = 0.001$).

CONCLUSION

Patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer showed a poor prognosis and a high risk of distant metastasis. Adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months improved outcomes for them.

Key words: Gastric cancer; T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0; Recurrence; Distant metastasis; Adjuvant chemotherapy

© **The Author(s) 2018.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer have a poor prognosis after curative resection. Due to limited evidence and a lack of guidelines for clinical practice, T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer remains a challenging clinical problem. Our retrospective study is complementary to large-scale phase III prospective trials and showed that the most common pattern of first recurrence for this population is distant metastasis and that prolonged adjuvant chemotherapy may improve patient outcomes. This finding will need to be confirmed by future prospective randomized controlled studies to improve the outcomes for patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer.

Wang QW, Zhang XT, Lu M, Shen L. Impact of duration of adjuvant chemotherapy in radically resected patients with

T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 31-39 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/31.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.31>

INTRODUCTION

Nearly one million new cases of gastric cancer (GC) were diagnosed in 2012, making it the fifth most common malignancy worldwide^[1]. Geographically, GC is most common in East Asian countries including China, Japan and Korea (45% in China). In contrast to the situation in Japan and Korea, GC in China is often detected at a locally advanced or advanced stage. Complete resection with a D2 lymphadenectomy remains the cornerstone of curative treatment; however, more than half of resectable GC patients develop recurrence despite achieving an R0 resection^[2].

Efforts to reduce the risk of recurrence and improve survival have focused on perioperative treatment. Postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy in GC is primarily supported by two large randomized phase III studies: The Japanese ACTS-GC^[3] (Adjuvant Chemotherapy Trial of TS-1 for Gastric Cancer) and the Asian CLASSIC^[4] (Capecitabine and Oxaliplatin Adjuvant Study in Stomach Cancer) trials. Both of these trials showed a survival benefit after D2 gastrectomy compared with surgery alone. A recent study, SAMIT^[5] (Japanese Stomach Cancer Adjuvant Multi-Institutional Trial), compared additional chemotherapy with single-agent fluoropyrimidine but failed to show a survival benefit. However, GC patients who were resectable at the most advanced stage (T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0, mostly III C) were not included in the CLASSIC trial; moreover, this patient population made up only 5% of the sample in the ACTS-GC study and 10% in the SAMIT study. Considering that R0 resection of the primary cancer had barely been achieved due to the locally advanced stage, these patients were at the highest risk for disease recurrence and were more likely to benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy. Due to the limited evidence as well as the difficulties in therapeutic management, T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer remains a challenging problem in clinical practice.

A Korean retrospective study^[6] that focused on stage IV [T4N1-3M0/T1-4N3M0, American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) 6th edition^[7]] GC patients, who were equivalent to the T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 (AJCC 7th edition^[8]) patients in the current study, showed that patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy exhibited a survival benefit compared with patients who received surgery alone. However, the Korean study did not discuss the appropriate adjuvant therapy modality, which remains undefined for T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC patients.

In view of the limited evidence regarding T4bN1-

3M0/TxN3bM0 GC, the difficulty of R0 resection, and the high risk of disease recurrence in this population, the aim of this retrospective study was to discuss the appropriate adjuvant therapy modality for patients with the most locally advanced GC.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

A total of 326 consecutive patients with primary GC with a pathological stage of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 based on the AJCC (7th edition) staging system who underwent potentially curative resection (R0) between October 1996 and December 2014 were identified in the database of Peking University Cancer Hospital. Of these patients, 18 had a distant metastasis that was detected before surgery, 48 had distant metastasis or peritoneal seeding (including positive peritoneal cytology) identified during the operation, 26 were given preoperative chemotherapy, 21 had a positive resection margin, 37 had recurrence within one month after surgery, and 176 with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 disease were available for analysis (Figure 1). All patients had histologically confirmed gastric or gastroesophageal junction adenocarcinoma.

Treatment and recurrence

A total of 145 (82.4%) patients had metastasis in sixteen or more regional lymph nodes with a median number of 20 metastatic lymph nodes (range: 0-70) and a median node positive rate (NPR) of 0.60 (range: 0.0-1.0). D2 lymph node dissection, according to the NCCN Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology-Gastric Cancer (Version 1.2017), was performed in 136 (77.3%) patients, and the median number of dissected lymph nodes was 33 (range: 2-108); 49 (27.8%) patients showed invasion of the adjacent structures and underwent a gastrectomy with bloc resection of the involved structures. A total of 132 (75%) patients underwent resection at a single institution in the Peking University Cancer Hospital.

Adjuvant chemotherapy was administered to 164 (93.2%) patients after curative resection. The chemotherapy regimens included monotherapy (capecitabine/S1/5-FU, $n = 10$), doublet chemotherapy (FOLFOX, $n = 33$; XELOX, $n = 34$; SOX, $n = 39$; capecitabine/S1+cisplatin, $n = 9$; paclitaxel+capecitabine, $n = 15$; paclitaxel+ cisplatin/oxaliplatin, $n = 4$) and triplet chemotherapy (based on 5-FU including cisplatin, oxaliplatin, epirubicin, paclitaxel, docetaxel, etoposide, and mitomycin, $n = 20$); 12 patients did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy. Fourteen patients received intra- or postoperative intraperitoneal perfusion of cisplatin/paclitaxel/5-FU, and four patients received postoperative chemoradiotherapy. All adverse events were assessed using the National Cancer Institute Common Toxicity Criteria (NCI-CTC), version 2.0. Dose modifications were made for patients who experienced hematologic or non-hematologic toxicity.

Disease recurrence was determined by radiologic or histological examination; the sites of recurrence were documented separately and included anastomotic sites, regional lymph nodes, peritoneum, ovary, adrenal gland, liver, lung, bone, extra-abdominal lymph nodes, and Virchow's lymph nodes. Based on these sites, the patterns of the first recurrence were categorized as locoregional recurrence (anastomotic sites and regional lymph nodes), peritoneal dissemination (ovary and the peritoneum), or distant metastasis (the liver, lung, bone, Virchow's lymph nodes, extra-abdominal lymph nodes, and adrenal gland).

Follow-up evaluation

Patients were followed every 3 mo for the first 2 years and then at 6-mo intervals until the fifth year. Regular follow-up evaluations consisted of a physical examination, routine laboratory tests, abdominal computed tomography (CT) scan, endoscopy, and chest X-ray.

Statistical analysis

The statistical analysis was performed with the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences (SPSS) software, version 21.0. Disease-free survival (DFS) was defined as the time from surgery until the recurrence of GC or death from any cause. Overall survival (OS) was defined as the time from surgery until death from any cause. Continuous variables were transformed to dichotomous variables in the survival analysis. χ^2 tests were used to compare clinicopathological characteristics between groups. Variables known to have prognostic value were selected in the final multivariable Cox proportional hazards model. Kaplan-Meier curves for disease-free survival and OS were compared using a log-rank test. A P -value of < 0.05 was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Patient characteristics

Our study included a group of 176 patients with metastasis in sixteen or more regional lymph nodes (TxN3bM0) or invasion of adjacent structures (T4bN1-3M0) in whom achieving R0 resection was difficult and who were assumed to be at high risk for recurrence. All patients, including 131 females and 45 males aged 25-81 years (56.4 ± 11.1 years), had histologically confirmed gastric or gastroesophageal junction adenocarcinoma; most had poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma. Of the 176 patients, 156 (88.6%) were classified as stage III C based on the AJCC TNM Staging Classification for Carcinoma of the Stomach (7th ed, 2010). The clinicopathological characteristics of the patients are listed in Table 1.

Survival and prognostic factors

Based on the follow-up data updated on July 31, 2015, the median follow-up time for the 176 patients was

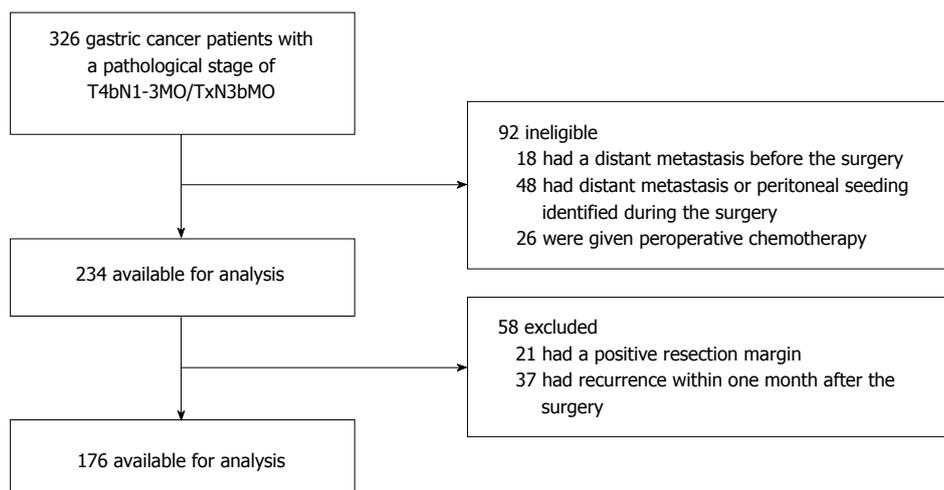


Figure 1 Study flow diagram.

Table 1 Relationship between clinicopathological characteristics and prognosis of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer patients

Clinicopathological characteristics	All patients (n = 176)		5-yr OS (%)	P value
	n	%		
Sex				
Male	131	74.4%	17.4%	0.702
Female	45	25.6%	15.8%	
Age (yr)				
≥ 60	68	38.6%	21.8%	0.799
< 60	108	61.4%	13.5%	
Tumor location				
Upper third	43	24.4%	17.7%	0.614
Middle third	56	31.8%	19.6%	
Lower third	62	35.2%	19.6%	
Total	15	8.5%	0.0%	
Tumor grade (differentiation)				
Moderate	15	8.5%	19.3%	0.241
Poor	161	91.5%	16.5%	
Lymphovascular invasion				
Yes	139	79.0%	10.3%	0.010
No	37	21.0%	30.6%	
No. of positive LNs				
0	4	2.3%	37.5%	0.174
1-6	17	9.7%	31.2%	
7-15	10	5.7%	0.0%	
≥ 16	145	82.4%	15.8%	
No. of dissected LNs				
≥ 30	106	60.2%	20.6%	0.326
< 30	70	39.8%	11.6%	
Positive LN ratio				
≥ 0.8	34	19.3%	6.2%	0.048
< 0.8	142	80.7%	20.5%	
Pathologic T stage ¹				
T2	5	2.8%	40.0%	0.420
T3	20	11.4%	30.6%	
T4a	102	58.0%	12.6%	
T4b	49	27.8%	21.2%	
Stage ¹				
III A	5	2.8%	40.0%	0.237
III B	15	8.5%	35.9%	
III C	156	88.6%	14.0%	

¹Recorded based on the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) TNM Staging Classification for Carcinoma of the Stomach (7th edition, 2010). LN: Lymph node; OS: Overall survival.

Table 2 Multivariate analysis of the prognostic factors for overall survival of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer patients

Clinicopathological characteristics	P value	Odds ratio	95%CI	
			Lower	Upper
Lymphovascular invasion	0.01	1.80	1.15	2.8
Node positive rate	0.14	1.36	0.90	2.1
Stage	0.49	0.71	0.34	1.5

LN: Lymph node.

47.4 mo (range: 2-202 mo). By the end of the follow-up period, 123 patients had died, 37 patients were alive, and 16 patients (9.1%) had been lost to follow-up.

The 5-year OS of the group was 16.8%; the median OS was 25.7 mo (95%CI: 20.9-30.5). The 3-year DFS of the whole group was 9.8%, while the median DFS was 11.7 mo (95%CI: 10.0-13.4). The univariate analysis showed that lymphovascular invasion and NPR ≥ 0.8 were associated with a poor prognosis (P = 0.01 and P = 0.048, respectively), while stage III C was not significantly associated with a poor prognosis according to the Kaplan-Meier method (P = 0.237, Table 1).

In the multivariate analysis, lymphovascular invasion was an independent prognostic factor (P = 0.01, HR: 1.8, 95%CI: 1.15-2.8) for OS in T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC patients (Table 2).

Patterns of recurrence

During the follow-up period, 147 (83.5%) of the 176 patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC experienced recurrence; the first recurrence was localized to a single site in 78.9% of patients, two sites in 13.6% of patients, and three or more sites in 6.8% of patients. As shown in Table 3, the most common pattern of first recurrence was distant metastasis (45.6%), followed by peritoneal dissemination (25.9%) and locoregional recurrence (22.5%). Nine patients (6.1%) who

Table 3 Overall survival according to patterns of recurrence in T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer patients after curative resection

Recurrent sites	Recurrent patients (n = 147)		Median OS (mo)	5-yr OS (%)	P value
	n	%			
Locoregional	33	22.5%	33.9	28.0%	0.001
Peritoneal	38	25.9%	16.0	0.0%	
Distant	67	45.6%	21.3	14.7%	

Table 4 Overall survival of patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer according to distant site of metastasis

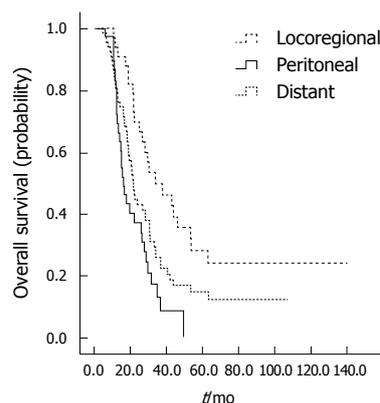
Distant metastasis site	Recurrent patients (n = 147)		Median OS (mo)	5-yr OS (%)
	n	%		
Liver	26	17.7%	18.3	15.5%
Lung and pleura	12	8.2%	16.8	0.0%
Bone	10	6.8%	30.7	29.2%

experienced combined patterns of recurrence were excluded from the survival analysis. The prognosis was best for patients with locoregional recurrence and worst for those who had peritoneal dissemination. Figure 2 presents the OS for each group. The 5-year OS rates were 28.0%, 0% and 14.7% for locoregional recurrence, peritoneal dissemination and distant metastasis, respectively, which showed statistically significant differences ($P = 0.001$).

We further analyzed OS according to the most distant metastatic sites; the most frequent site of distant metastasis was the liver, followed by the lung (including malignant pleural effusion), bone, and other distant sites. Eight of ten patients had bone metastases as the first recurrence site without liver or lung metastases. The median OS for patients with bone metastasis from GC was 30.7 mo, while that for patients with other metastatic sites was 21.9 mo ($P = 0.35$). The median OS for patients with lung metastasis was significantly shorter than that for patients with other metastatic sites (16.8 mo vs 22.4 mo, $P = 0.04$) (Table 4). The results showed that patients with bone metastasis had a better prognosis, whereas patients with lung and pleura metastasis had a worse prognosis than those with other metastatic sites.

Adjuvant chemotherapy

During the follow-up period after curative resection, 12 patients did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy because of their poor condition or rejection of chemotherapy; 164 (93.2%) of the 176 patients received at least one cycle of adjuvant chemotherapy. Combined chemotherapy, including doublet and triple regimens, was associated with a better prognosis than monotherapy but with no significant difference in 5-year OS (0% in the monotherapy group and 17.5% in the combined chemotherapy group, $P =$

**Figure 2 Overall survival of patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer after curative resection according to the patterns of recurrence.**

0.613). Triple adjuvant chemotherapy showed no significant survival benefit over the doublet regimen ($P = 0.449$). The 5-year OS rates were 0%, 17.4%, and 18.5% for the monotherapy, doublet chemotherapy and triple chemotherapy groups, respectively ($P = 0.661$); the 3-year DFS rates were 0%, 5.3%, and 5.3%, respectively ($P = 0.583$, Table 5). The patient characteristics, except for age, were similar in the three groups; approximately 60.0% of patients in the monotherapy group, 40.7% in the doublet group, and 28.0% in the triplet group were older than 60 years ($P = 0.202$).

In our study, various chemotherapeutic agents, including platinum-, taxane-, epirubicin-based regimens, did not show any significant differences in survival benefit (data not shown).

The median number of cycles of adjuvant chemotherapy was six, and the median time of adjuvant chemotherapy was 4.2 mo. Thirty-nine (22.1%) of the 176 patients received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six mo, as shown in Table 5. A longer duration of adjuvant chemotherapy was significantly associated with a better prognosis; the median OS was prolonged to 40.2 mo (95%CI: 30.6-48.2) in patients given adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months, compared with 21.6 mo (95%CI: 19.1-24.0) in patients given adjuvant chemotherapy for less than six months ($P = 0.001$). The median DFS was 23.2 mo (95%CI: 21.5-24.9) in patients given adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months, compared with 9.9 mo (95%CI: 7.6-12.3) in patients receiving adjuvant chemotherapy for less than six months ($P = 0.0001$) (Table 5, Figure 3). The patient characteristics were similar between the two groups.

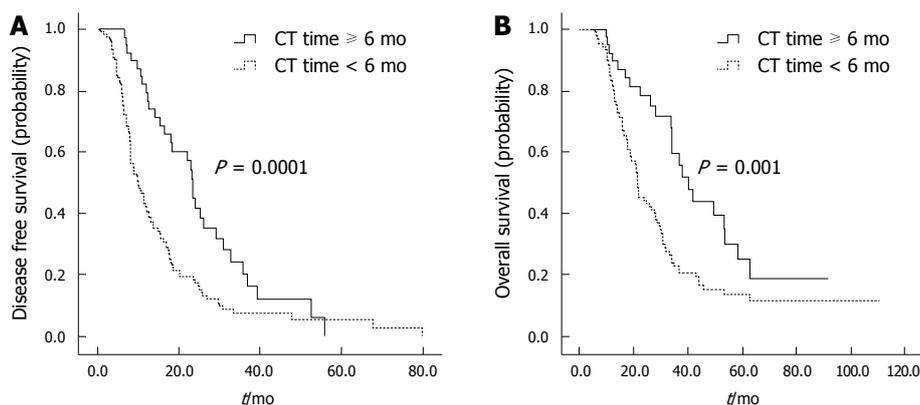
Treatment compliance, modifications and adverse events

Of the 164 patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy, only 39 patients continued the treatment for over six months. The most common reasons for withdrawal of treatment included the refusal of the patients to continue treatment due to inadequate

Table 5 Relationship between adjuvant treatment and the prognosis of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer patients

Treatment		<i>n</i>	Median DFS (mo)	3-yr DFS (%)	<i>P</i> value	Median OS (mo)	5-yr OS (%)	<i>P</i> value
Adjuvant chemotherapy	Yes	164	12.3	10.4%	0.000	25.7	16.1%	0.532
	No	12	2.8	0.0%		18.7	22.2%	
Chemotherapy	Mono-therapy	10	6.7	0.0%	0.583	20.3	0.0%	0.661
		134	12.0	5.3%		26.3	17.4%	
Regimen	Doublet	134	12.0	5.3%	0.000	29.7	18.5%	0.001
	Triple	20	13.0	5.3%		40.2	25.0%	
Adjuvant chemotherapy time	≥ 6 mo	39	23.2	20.2%	0.000	40.2	25.0%	0.001
	< 6 mo	125	9.9	7.3%		21.6	13.4%	

DFS: Disease-free survival.

**Figure 3 Kaplan-Meier curves of disease-free survival (A) and overall survival (B) for T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer patients after curative gastrectomy according to the duration of adjuvant chemotherapy.** *P* value by log-rank test. A: Disease-free survival (DFS): 23.2 mo vs 9.9 mo, *P* = 0.0001; B: Overall survival: 40.2 mo vs 21.6 mo, *P* = 0.001. CT: Chemotherapy.

social support (32%), adverse events (28%), the detection of relapse or metastasis (14.6%), or other factors (25.4%). A total of 114 patients (69.5%) required dose modifications or chemotherapy delays, including 24/39 (61.5%) in the chemotherapy ≥ 6 mo group and 90/125 (72.0%) in the chemotherapy < 6 mo group. Of the 154 patients who received doublet or triplet regimens, 20 patients (13.0%) switched to monotherapy because of adverse events or upon their request.

Adverse events, including hematologic and non-hematologic toxic effects, were analyzed. The most frequent grade 3 or 4 adverse events were neutropenia (20.3%), nausea and vomiting (7.3%), anorexia (6.7%), and diarrhea (3.7%). Overall, 44 patients (26.8%) developed grade 3 or 4 toxicities (data not shown).

DISCUSSION

The aim of this retrospective study was to provide evidence for clinical treatment of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC patients after curative resection. This population is at the most advanced stage of GC at which resection is possible; therefore, R0 resection is difficult, and the risk of recurrence is high. Currently, controversy exists regarding whether prolonging the duration of adjuvant

chemotherapy, intensifying adjuvant chemotherapy, or undergoing preoperative chemotherapy will improve the prognosis for these patients. More efforts to explore appropriate adjuvant therapy modalities are necessary for clinical practice.

Despite undergoing standardized adjuvant chemotherapy followed by curative resection performed by experienced surgeons in our high-volume GC centers, patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC had a high risk of recurrence and a poor prognosis. The 5-year OS of the entire group was 16.8%, which is significantly lower than that of patients with stage III disease, ranging between 40%-70% in most phase 3 trials^[3,9]. Patients at stage III C accounted for 88.6% of our study population; the 5-year OS for these patients was far lower than that of patients with stage III C GC reported in another study (14.0% vs 30.2%)^[10]. Moreover, a Korean study^[6] showed that the 5-year OS rate of the patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC was 39.6%; only 61.7% of these patients experienced recurrence^[11]. However, the 5-year OS of patients in our study who received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than 6 mo was only 25%, and 147 (83.5%) of the 176 patients experienced recurrence.

Several factors may be responsible for the poor prognosis of patients in our study. First, new diagnostic

modalities such as endoscopic ultrasound (EUS), positron emission tomography/computed tomography (PET/CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and laparoscopic staging, were not used for preoperative staging of patients treated during the early part of the study, which may have reduced the accuracy of staging and led to the advanced gastric cancer be treated as resectable gastric cancer improperly^[12-14]. Therefore, patients included in this study may be mixed with advanced patients actually, and these errors can be avoided using new staging approach. Second, the risk of non-regional lymph node metastases is increased in patients with N3b, although all tumors with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 are staged regardless of the M1 category; additionally, without appropriate clinical information, surgical pathologists may be unaware that particular lymph node metastases are already distant metastases and they may be classified as N3b instead of M1. Third, Korean and Japanese surgeons have performed more D2+ lymphadenectomies, total gastrectomies, multivisceral resections, and Billroth II digestive tract reconstructions than their Chinese counterparts; indeed, the OS of Korean patients was longer than that of Chinese patients, especially for those with stage III disease^[15]. Fourth, 39 patients in our study underwent limited lymph node dissections, whereas only 4 patients received postoperative chemoradiotherapy, as the INT 0116 study established postoperative chemoradiotherapy as a standard of care for patients who undergo < D2 dissections^[16]. These facts reflect the medical status in China and contribute to a new understanding of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 patients, who mostly belong to stage III C, while they are distinct from conventional stage III C GC patients with regard to the biological behavior and prognosis of the disease.

In our study, the most common pattern of first recurrence was distant metastasis; sites of distant metastasis and locoregional recurrence accounted for 45.6% and 22.5%, respectively, of patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 recurrent GC. Patients with locoregional recurrence showed a better prognosis than patients with distant metastasis, suggesting that systemic therapy, rather than local therapy, was more likely to benefit patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC. According to the results of the ACTS-GC and CLASSIC trials^[3,9], adjuvant chemotherapy with one year of S1 or 6 mo of the XELOX regimen after a D2 gastrectomy was confirmed to be the standard adjuvant treatment for locally advanced gastric cancer. Without definitive data favoring combined therapy over monotherapy, especially in GC patients with the most advanced stage of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0, it remains unclear whether an intensified or longer duration of adjuvant chemotherapy provides an additional benefit.

In our study, triple adjuvant chemotherapy showed no significant survival benefit compared with a doublet regimen. Recently, the SAMIT study and the ITACA-S study, both of which compared poly-chemotherapy vs

monotherapy, failed to show any benefit for patients in an adjuvant setting^[5,17]. Intensifying adjuvant chemotherapy is almost considered too difficult to provide additional benefit. It is of note that patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months in our study benefited significantly from the treatment, with the median OS prolonged to 40.2 mo. In contrast, the median OS was 21.6 mo for patients who received chemotherapy for less than six months. It is therefore suggested that prolonged adjuvant chemotherapy may improve the outcomes for patients at a high risk of distant recurrence. However, only 22.1% of the patients completed all six months of chemotherapy, which may be explained by the frailty of GC patients after surgery, along with the toxicity of adjuvant poly-chemotherapy. In this case, active dose modification based on the adverse events of chemotherapy should to be performed to ensure adequate chemotherapy time and additional benefit from the treatment.

While preoperative chemotherapy may theoretically be superior to postoperative chemotherapy for several reasons^[18-20], preoperative chemotherapy has been widely used for patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC in clinical practice. However, whether perioperative or postoperative chemotherapy is more beneficial for T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 patients lacks data supported by prospective studies; the ongoing RESOLVE study (NCT01534546) to compare perioperative chemotherapy of SOX vs SOX/XELOX as postoperative chemotherapy in locally advanced gastric cancer with D2 dissection may provide additional evidence. Moreover, patients in arm C of the RESOLVE study will receive 8 cycles of perioperative SOX followed by 3 cycles of S-1 monotherapy, which may provide evidence for prolonged adjuvant chemotherapy.

Based on the classification and statistical analysis, 26 patients with T4b disease were excluded from our study because they had a positive resection margin, which indicates that at least one-third of T4b patients according to preoperative staging failed to eventually undergo R0 resection. Preoperative chemoradiotherapy (CRT) may increase resectability and improve the outcomes of T4b patients. The role of CRT continues to be evaluated in many ongoing clinical trials worldwide, such as the Trial of Preoperative Therapy for Gastric and Esophagogastric Junction Adenocarcinoma (TOPGEAR, NCT01924819) and the ARTIST-II trial in patients with lymph node-positive GC after D2 gastrectomy.

Due to the small sample sizes and the heterogeneity of therapy administered over a long period, the results in this study have been mixed and biased. Although this study was conducted based on retrospective data, we think that the bias may be reduced by the fact that the surgeries were performed in our high-volume GC centers and patients had access to good medical care. Indeed, this study is the largest retrospective analysis of the effect of adjuvant therapy

on patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC; the results reflect the current medical situation for the treatment of gastric cancer in China and are complementary to those of large-scale phase III prospective trials.

Undoubtedly, along with an in-depth understanding of molecular and gene profiling, personalized precision medicine as well as adjuvant and perioperative multimodal therapies^[21] will be crucial for improving the outcomes of conventional adjuvant chemotherapeutic treatments in the future.

In conclusion, patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer showed a poor prognosis, with the most common pattern of first recurrence being distant metastasis rather than locoregional recurrence. Adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months may improve the outcomes of this patient group. However, a prospective randomized controlled study will be required to confirm these findings and to improve the outcomes for patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

In view of the limited evidence regarding T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC, as well as the difficulty of achieving R0 resection and the high risk of disease recurrence, this retrospective study is complementary to large-scale phase III prospective trials and may provide implications for clinical practice.

Research motivation

The population targeted in our study is difficult to treat with no accepted standard of care. This study is the largest retrospective analysis of the effect of adjuvant therapy on patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC. Furthermore, our study explored the patterns of recurrence and their relationships to the prognosis of these patients.

Research objectives

To provide evidence regarding the postoperative treatment of patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer, for which guidelines have not been established.

Research methods

Patients who had undergone curative resection between 1996 and 2014 with a pathological stage of T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 for gastric cancer were retrospectively analyzed; staging was based on the 7th edition of the American Joint Committee on Cancer staging system. The clinicopathological characteristics, administration of adjuvant chemotherapy, and patterns of recurrence were studied. Univariate and multivariate analyses of prognostic factors were conducted. The chemotherapeutic agents mainly included fluorouracil, platinum and taxanes, used as monotherapy, doublet, or triplet regimens. Patterns of first recurrence were categorized as locoregional recurrence, peritoneal dissemination, or distant metastasis.

Research results

The 5-year overall survival (OS) of the whole group ($n = 176$) was 16.8%, and the median OS was 25.7 mo (95%CI: 20.9-30.5). Lymphovascular invasion and a node positive rate (NPR) ≥ 0.8 were associated with a poor prognosis ($P = 0.01$ and $P = 0.048$, respectively). One hundred forty-seven (83.5%) of the 176 patients eventually experienced recurrence; the most common pattern of the first recurrence was distant metastasis. The prognosis was best for patients with locoregional recurrence and worst for those with peritoneal dissemination. Twelve (6.8%) of the 176 patients did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy, while 164 (93.2%) patients received adjuvant chemotherapy. Combined

chemotherapy, including doublet and triplet regimens, was associated with a better prognosis than monotherapy, with no significant difference in 5-year OS (17.5% vs 0%, $P = 0.613$). The triplet regimen showed no significant survival benefit compared with the doublet regimen for 5-year OS (18.5% vs 17.4%, $P = 0.661$). Thirty-nine (22.1%) patients received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months; the median OS in patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months was 40.2 mo (95%CI: 30.6-48.2), significantly longer than the 21.6 mo (95%CI: 19.1-24.0) in patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy for less than six months ($P = 0.001$).

Research conclusions

Patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer showed a poor prognosis, with the most common pattern of first recurrence being distant metastasis rather than locoregional recurrence. Adjuvant chemotherapy for longer than six months may improve the outcomes of this patient group.

Research perspectives

To date, few retrospective studies have analyzed the survival and prognosis factors for T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 GC patients; however, due to the small sample sizes and different treatment regimens, the results have been mixed. No meta-analyses have been conducted on this topic. However, a prospective randomized controlled study will be required to confirm these findings and to improve the outcomes for patients with T4bN1-3M0/TxN3bM0 gastric cancer.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Ferlay J**, Soerjomataram I, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin DM, Forman D, Bray F. Cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: sources, methods and major patterns in GLOBOCAN 2012. *Int J Cancer* 2015; **136**: E359-E386 [PMID: 25220842 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.29210]
- 2 **Gee DW**, Rattner DW. Management of gastroesophageal tumors. *Oncologist* 2007; **12**: 175-185 [PMID: 17296813 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.12-2-175]
- 3 **Sasako M**, Sakuramoto S, Katai H, Kinoshita T, Furukawa H, Yamaguchi T, Nashimoto A, Fujii M, Nakajima T, Ohashi Y. Five-year outcomes of a randomized phase III trial comparing adjuvant chemotherapy with S-1 versus surgery alone in stage II or III gastric cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 4387-4393 [PMID: 22010012 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.36.5908]
- 4 **Bang YJ**, Kim YW, Yang HK, Chung HC, Park YK, Lee KH, Lee KW, Kim YH, Noh SI, Cho JY, Mok YJ, Kim YH, Ji J, Yeh TS, Button P, Sirzén F, Noh SH; CLASSIC trial investigators. Adjuvant capecitabine and oxaliplatin for gastric cancer after D2 gastrectomy (CLASSIC): a phase 3 open-label, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 315-321 [PMID: 22226517 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)61873-4]
- 5 **Tsuburaya A**, Yoshida K, Kobayashi M, Yoshino S, Takahashi M, Takiguchi N, Tanabe K, Takahashi N, Imamura H, Tatsumoto N, Hara A, Nishikawa K, Fukushima R, Nozaki I, Kojima H, Miyashita Y, Oba K, Buyse M, Morita S, Sakamoto J. Sequential paclitaxel followed by tegafur and uracil (UFT) or S-1 versus UFT or S-1 monotherapy as adjuvant chemotherapy for T4a/b gastric cancer (SAMIT): a phase 3 factorial randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 886-893 [PMID: 24954805 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70025-7]
- 6 **Ha TK**, Jung MS, Lee KH, Lee KG, Kwon SJ. The effect of adjuvant chemotherapy on stage IV (T4N1-3M0 and T1-3N3M0) gastric cancer. *Cancer Res Treat* 2009; **41**: 19-23 [PMID: 19688067 DOI: 10.4143/crt.2009.41.1.19]
- 7 **Greene FL PD**, Fleming ID. AJCC Cancer Staging Manual: TNM Classification of Malignant Tumors, 6th ed. New York: Springer-Verlag; 2002
- 8 **Edge SB BD**, Compton CC. AJCC Cancer Staging Handbook. 7th ed. New York: Springer-Verlag; 2010 [DOI: 10.1186/s12876-015-0384-1]
- 9 **Noh SH**, Park SR, Yang HK, Chung HC, Chung JJ, Kim SW, Kim HH, Choi JH, Kim HK, Yu W, Lee JI, Shin DB, Ji J, Chen JS, Lim Y,

- Ha S, Bang YJ; CLASSIC trial investigators. Adjuvant capecitabine plus oxaliplatin for gastric cancer after D2 gastrectomy (CLASSIC): 5-year follow-up of an open-label, randomised phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 1389-1396 [PMID: 25439693 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70473-5]
- 10 **Jung H**, Lee HH, Song KY, Jeon HM, Park CH. Validation of the seventh edition of the American Joint Committee on Cancer TNM staging system for gastric cancer. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 2371-2378 [PMID: 24048784 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25778]
- 11 **Xue YW**, Wei YZ. The relationship of prognosis to surgery and pathologic characteristics of stage IV (M0) gastric cancer patients. *Chin J Cancer* 2010; **29**: 355-358 [PMID: 20346207 DOI: 10.5732/cjc.009.10617]
- 12 **Bentrem D**, Wilton A, Mazumdar M, Brennan M, Coit D. The value of peritoneal cytology as a preoperative predictor in patients with gastric carcinoma undergoing a curative resection. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2005; **12**: 347-353 [PMID: 15915368 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2005.03.065]
- 13 **Kwee RM**, Kwee TC. Imaging in local staging of gastric cancer: a systematic review. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 2107-2116 [PMID: 17513817 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.09.5224]
- 14 **Weber WA**, Ott K. Imaging of esophageal and gastric cancer. *Semin Oncol* 2004; **31**: 530-541 [PMID: 15297944 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminol.2004.04.016]
- 15 **Shen ZL**, Song KY, Ye YJ, Xie QW, Liang B, Jiang K, Park CH, Wang S. Significant differences in the clinicopathological characteristics and survival of gastric cancer patients from two cancer centers in china and Korea. *J Gastric Cancer* 2015; **15**: 19-28 [PMID: 25861519 DOI: 10.5230/jgc.2015.15.1.19]
- 16 **Smalley SR**, Benedetti JK, Haller DG, Hundahl SA, Estes NC, Ajani JA, Gunderson LL, Goldman B, Martenson JA, Jessup JM, Stemmermann GN, Blanke CD, Macdonald JS. Updated analysis of SWOG-directed intergroup study 0116: a phase III trial of adjuvant radiochemotherapy versus observation after curative gastric cancer resection. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 2327-2333 [PMID: 22585691 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.36.7136]
- 17 **Bajetta E**, Floriani I, Di Bartolomeo M, Labianca R, Falcone A, Di Costanzo F, Comella G, Amadori D, Pinto C, Carlomagno C, Nitti D, Daniele B, Mini E, Poli D, Santoro A, Mosconi S, Casaretti R, Boni C, Pinotti G, Bidoli P, Landi L, Rosati G, Ravaioli A, Cantore M, Di Fabio F, Aitini E, Marchet A; ITACA-S (Intergroup Trial of Adjuvant Chemotherapy in Adenocarcinoma of the Stomach Trial) Study Group. Randomized trial on adjuvant treatment with FOLFIRI followed by docetaxel and cisplatin versus 5-fluorouracil and folinic acid for radically resected gastric cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25**: 1373-1378 [PMID: 24728035 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu146]
- 18 **Schuhmacher C**, Gretschesel S, Lordick F, Reichardt P, Hohenberger W, Eisenberger CF, Haag C, Mauer ME, Hasan B, Welch J, Ott K, Hoelscher A, Schneider PM, Bechstein W, Wilke H, Lutz MP, Nordlinger B, Van Cutsem E, Siewert JR, Schlag PM. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy compared with surgery alone for locally advanced cancer of the stomach and cardia: European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer randomized trial 40954. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 5210-5218 [PMID: 21060024 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.26.6114]
- 19 **Ychou M**, Boige V, Pignon JP, Conroy T, Bouché O, Lebreton G, Ducourtieux M, Bedenne L, Fabre JM, Saint-Aubert B, Genève J, Lasser P, Rougier P. Perioperative chemotherapy compared with surgery alone for resectable gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma: an FNCLCC and FFCO multicenter phase III trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 1715-1721 [PMID: 21444866 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.0597]
- 20 **Yoshikawa T**, Rino Y, Yukawa N, Oshima T, Tsuburaya A, Masuda M. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy for gastric cancer in Japan: a standing position by comparing with adjuvant chemotherapy. *Surg Today* 2014; **44**: 11-21 [PMID: 23508452 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-013-0529-1]
- 21 **Cohen DJ**, Leichman L. Controversies in the treatment of local and locally advanced gastric and esophageal cancers. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 1754-1759 [PMID: 25918302 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.59.7765]

P- Reviewer: Kopljar M, Merrett ND S- Editor: Kong JX
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Wang CH



Clinical Practice Study

Neoadjuvant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy plus concomitant 5-fluorouracil infusion in locally advanced rectal cancer: A phase II study

Zeynep Gural, Sezer Saglam, Serap Yucel, Esra Kaytan-Saglam, Oktar Asoglu, Cetin Ordu, Hediye Acun, Rasul Sharifov, Semen Onder, Ahmet Kizir, Ethem N Oral

Zeynep Gural, Serap Yucel, Department of Radiation Oncology, Acibadem University Medical Faculty, Istanbul 34303, Turkey

Sezer Saglam, Cetin Ordu, Department of Medical Oncology, Istanbul Bilim University, Istanbul 34349, Turkey

Esra Kaytan-Saglam, Ahmet Kizir, Ethem N Oral, Department of Radiation Oncology, Istanbul Medical Faculty, Istanbul University, Istanbul 34093, Turkey

Oktar Asoglu, Department of General Surgery, Academia of Clinical Science of Bogazici, Istanbul 34357, Turkey

Hediye Acun, Department of Medical Biophysics, Harran University Medical Faculty, Sanliurfa 60300, Turkey

Rasul Sharifov, Department of Radiology, Bezm-i Alem University, Istanbul 34093, Turkey

Semen Onder, Department of Pathology, Istanbul Medical Faculty, Istanbul University, Istanbul 34093, Turkey

ORCID number: Zeynep Gural (0000-0003-3968-8255); Sezer Saglam (0000-0001-8954-5792); Serap Yucel (0000-0003-1537-9562); Esra Kaytan-Saglam (0000-0002-4034-1614); Oktar Asoglu (0000-0002-9147-1654); Cetin Ordu (0000-0003-4423-8005); Hediye Acun (0000-0003-3988-6550); Rasul Sharifov (0000-0002-1555-6832); Semen Onder (0000-0002-1384-630X); Ahmet Kizir (0000-0003-0241-5122); Ethem N Oral (0000-0002-4370-7386).

Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this study; Gural Z and Saglam S contributed equally to the study.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Istanbul Medical Faculty Institutional Review Board.

Informed consent statement: All information was obtained with the appropriate institutional review board waivers, and the data were collected without revealing any personal information.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest, financial or otherwise.

Data sharing statement: Dataset is available from the corresponding author by e-mail at: zeynep.gural@acibadem.com.tr.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Zeynep Gural, MD, Attending Doctor, Department of Radiation Oncology, Acibadem University Medical Faculty, Halkali Merkez Mahallesi, Turgut Ozal Blv No:16, Istanbul 34303, Turkey. zeynep.gural@acibadem.com.tr
Telephone: +90-533-2696742
Fax: +90-212-4044445

Received: September 4, 2017
Peer-review started: September 7, 2017
First decision: October 9, 2017
Revised: November 26, 2017
Accepted: December 4, 2017
Article in press: December 4, 2017
Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract**AIM**

To evaluate the efficacy and tolerability of neoadjuvant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy (HART)

and concurrent chemotherapy in patients with locally advanced infraperitoneal rectal cancer.

METHODS

A total of 30 patients with histopathologically confirmed T2-3/N0+ infraperitoneal adenocarcinoma of rectum cancer patients received preoperative 42 Gy/1.5 Gy/18 days/bid radiotherapy and continuous infusion of 5-fluorouracil (325 mg/m²). All patients were operated 4-8 wk after neoadjuvant concomitant therapy.

RESULTS

In the early phase of treatment, 6 patients had grade III-IV gastrointestinal toxicity, 2 patients had grade III-IV hematologic toxicity, and 1 patient had grade V toxicity due to postoperative sepsis during chemotherapy. Only 1 patient had radiotherapy-related late side effects, *i.e.*, grade IV tenesmus. Complete pathological response was achieved in 6 patients (21%), while near-complete pathological response was obtained in 9 (31%). After a median follow-up period of 60 mo, the local tumor control rate was 96.6%. In 13 patients, distant metastasis occurred. Disease-free survival rates at 2 and 5 years were 63.3% and 53%, and corresponding overall survival rates were 70% and 53.1%, respectively.

CONCLUSION

Although it has excellent local control and complete pathological response rates, neoadjuvant HART concurrent chemotherapy appears to not be a feasible treatment regimen in locally advanced rectal cancer, having high perioperative complication and intolerable side effects. Effects of reduced 5-fluorouracil dose or omission of chemotherapy with the aim of reducing toxicity may be examined in further studies.

Key words: Hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy; Rectal cancer; Neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy

© **The Author(s) 2018.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: This study includes a first phase II study evaluating neoadjuvant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy plus concomitant infusional 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) chemotherapy in locally advanced rectal cancer (not resectable cancer). This regimen may allow clinicians to design other neoadjuvant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapies. This study showed excellent local control but high rate of perioperative complications. Decreasing or modifying the 5-FU dose could provide better local control.

Gural Z, Saglam S, Yucel S, Kaytan-Saglam E, Asoglu O, Ordu C, Acun H, Sharifov R, Onder S, Kizir A, Oral EN. Neoadjuvant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy plus concomitant 5-fluorouracil infusion in locally advanced rectal cancer: A phase II study. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 40-47 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/40.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.40>

INTRODUCTION

Rectal cancer is associated with a high incidence of local recurrence and distant metastasis^[1,2]. In randomized studies, local-regional recurrence despite mesorectal resection has been reported to occur in 15% to 30% of the patients undergoing surgery alone^[3-8]. In this regard, addition of preoperative and postoperative treatments to surgery have been shown to significantly improve local recurrence and survival rates^[9-13], leading to standard administration of such treatments. Currently, preoperative chemoradiation (CRT) is the preferred treatment regimen in these patients, owing to low local recurrence rates and higher chance of sphincter-sparing surgery; although, studies comparing preoperative and postoperative CRT are relatively limited.

Besides conventional radiotherapy (RT) consisting of 45-50 Gy/1.8-2 Gy/5-6 wk, hypofractionated and hyperfractionated accelerated RT (HART; 42 Gy/1.5 Gy/18 d) are also used. HART reduces the risk of repopulation in tumor cells by shortening the treatment time and increases the repair capacity of normal tissues after sublethal damage through the reduction of the fraction dose. Thus, a survival advantage is provided in favor of normal cells, since tumor cells exhibit a poor repair mechanism^[14]. In this background, a fractionated HART scheme was examined in this study.

Therefore, this study was carried out to observe the early and late effects of HART regimen in combination with neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients diagnosed with locally advanced rectal cancer.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patient selection

Previously untreated patients with histologically confirmed adenocarcinoma of the rectum (mid and distal \leq 12 cm from the anal verge) were included in the study at Istanbul University Oncology Institute. Patient inclusion criteria were as follows: presence of resectable tumor; Karnofsky performance score \geq 80; adequate bone marrow reserve (hemoglobin $>$ 11 g/dL, white blood cell $>$ 3500 mL, platelet count $>$ 100000 mL), normal kidney and liver function tests (creatinine $<$ 1.3 mg/dL, alanine aminotransferase and aspartate aminotransferase $<$ 80 U/L), and \leq 70 years of age. Patients who had received pelvic RT previously and patients with clinically detected distant metastases were excluded from the study. Clinical staging prior to treatment was accomplished based on physical examination, tumor markers (carcinoembryonic antigen, CA19-9), complete blood count and biochemistry tests, positron emission-computed tomography, pelvic-diffusion magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and endorectal ultrasound. This prospective study was approved by the local ethics committee. A written informed consent was obtained from all patients prior to treatment.

Table 1 Patient characteristics

Characteristic	<i>n</i> = 30
Sex, M/F	19/11
Age, median (range)	53 (30-70)
Tumor location, distance from anal verge	
≤ 5 cm	19 (63)
> 5 cm	11 (37)
Clinical TN stage	
T2N2	1 (3)
T3N0	2 (7)
T3N1	15 (50)
T3N2	12 (40)
Tumor differentiation	
Well	10 (33)
Moderate	10 (33)
Poor	4 (14)
Mucinous	3 (10)
Signet ring cell	3 (10)

Unless otherwise stated, data are presented as *n* (%). M: Male; F: Female.

Preoperative CRT

All patients received preoperative HART (42 Gy/1.5 Gy/18 d/bid) and concurrent continuous infusion of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU; 325 mg/m²) and were hospitalized during treatments to observe the possible acute side effects.

Prior to RT planning, computed tomography was performed in prone position with belly board, with a 0.5 cm slice thickness for all patients. Gross tumor volume and clinical target volume were estimated by the radiologist and radiation oncologist. Patients were treated with a 3-D conformal RT technique, through posterior and lateral fields using a linear accelerator (18 MV) and with an isodose of 95% of planned target volume. RT regimen was defined by a fraction dose of 150 cGy/fr given 2 times/d, 5 d/wk, with a minimum 8 h between fractions. Total dose was 4200 cGy and total treatment duration was 18 d.

Port or subclavian catheter was used to give 5-FU in the form of a continuous infusion during the entire treatment. The daily dose of 5-FU that was given to patients was 325 mg/m²[15]. Surgery was performed 4-8 wk after the completion of CRT.

Low anterior or abdominoperineal resection (total mesorectal excision) was performed depending on the location of the tumor and response rate. Four cycles of 5-FU (400 mg/m², D1-5, q 28 d) plus folinic acid (20 mg/m², D1-5, q 28 d) were administered postoperatively.

Assessment of efficacy and side effects

The primary endpoint was pathological response rate after CRT, and secondary endpoints included the local control rate, surgical margin positivity, survival and toxicity. Patients were assessed for toxicity during CRT on a daily basis. During the period between the end of CRT and surgery, patient assessments for side effects were performed weekly. Acute radiation toxicity criteria of the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group

and the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) were used for side effect assessments^[16]. Pathologic response and staging were defined according to the Dworak regression scoring system^[17] and TNM staging system^[18], as described by the American Joint Committee on Cancer.

Statistical analysis

Statistical analyses were performed with SPSS 16.0 (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, United States) statistical software. Survival was calculated using the Kaplan-Meier method.

RESULTS

Thirty patients (19 males and 11 females) who were diagnosed with locally advanced rectum cancer between October 2007 and March 2009 were included. The median age was 53 years (range: 30-70 years). Patient characteristics are summarized in Table 1. There were only 2 patients with T3N0 disease, and one of them had positive circumferential margins in staging MRI.

Pathological findings

Surgery was performed in all subjects except for one, who was found to have metastases during the early period after the CRT. Surgery was performed at week 4 in 15 patients and between weeks 6 and 8 in 13 patients. Twelve patients (41%) underwent sphincter-sparing surgery. According to the Dworak total regression scoring system, 6 of 29 (21%) patients who underwent surgery had grade IV (total) regression, and 9 patients (31%) had grade III (near total) regression. Corresponding figures for grade II, I and 0 regression were 11 patients (38%), 2 patients (7%) and 1 patient (3%), respectively.

Positive margins were found in 2 patients (6.6%). In 14 patients, mesorectal fascia invasion was detected in staging MRI and only 2 of those patients had positive radial surgical margin. Comparison of ypT and cT yielded a down-staging rate of 59%. Clinical and pathological tumor stages are shown in Table 2. The median number of lymph nodes that were excised was 25 (2-58), respectively. No pathologic lymph nodes were present in 19 (63%) patients. With regard to N stage, 20 (69%) patients were found to have down-staging.

Local control and survival

One (3.3%) patient had local recurrence while distant metastases were found in 13 (43.3%) patients during a median follow up of 60 mo (5-78 mo). None of the patients with T3N0 disease had local recurrence. Overall, 14 patients (46.6%) died during the study period. The causes of death were systemic metastasis (13 patients) and chemotherapy-related toxicity (1 patient). Median time to progression was 59 mo (2-78

Table 2 Clinical (cT2) and pathological (ypT) tumor stages

	cT2	cT3	Total
ypT0	-	6 (20.6)	6 (20.6)
ypT1	-	3 (10.3)	3 (10.3)
ypT2	-	8 (27.5)	6 (20.6)
ypT3	1	11 (37.9)	12 (41.3)
Total	1	28	29

Data are presented as *n* (%).

Table 3 Surgical complications

Timing of the complication	
Perioperative	6 (20.6) ¹
Early postoperative	4 (13.7) ²
Late postoperative	2 (6.8) ³

¹Bladder-urethra injury (*n* = 4), rectum perforation (*n* = 1), necrosis due to proctectomy (*n* = 1); ²Acute renal failure (*n* = 3), perirectal abscess (*n* = 1); ³Colovaginal fistula (*n* = 1), perirectal abscess (*n* = 1). Data are presented as *n* (%).

mo). The 2- and 5-year disease-free survival (DFS) rates were 63% and 53%, while the 2- and 5-year overall survival (OS) rates were 70% and 53.1%, respectively. The patients with complete or near-complete pathological response were compared to patients with less favorable group for survival. We found no significant difference in either group for DFS ($P = 0.63$) and OS ($P = 0.32$).

Toxicity and complications

Early side effects of preoperative CRT: The highest frequency of side effects occurred at weeks 3-4. During the acute phase 6 (20%) patients developed grade III-IV gastrointestinal system toxicity (3 grade III tenesmus/diarrhea and 3 grade IV tenesmus and diarrhea), and 2 (6.7%) patients developed grade III-IV hematopoietic system toxicity (1 grade III leucopenia and 1 grade IV neutropenia). There were no interruptions in RT due to toxicity, while in 4 patients chemotherapy was interrupted for 1 wk. Perianal abscess formation was observed in 3 patients before the planned date of surgery. One patient experienced spontaneous perforation at the tumor zone prior to surgery.

Perioperative complications: One patient had spontaneous perforation of the colon before surgery. Surgery was complicated in 4 patients with urethra-bladder injury, and in 1 patient with rectal perforation. Temporary nephrostomy tube was inserted in 3 patients. One patient developed incontinence and impotence due to nerve damage caused by bladder injury. Total proctectomy procedure was performed in 1 patient due to sudden onset of ischemia during mesorectal resection. Perirectal abscesses developed in 2 patients. Surgical complications are shown in Table 3.

Postoperative chemotherapy: Sixteen (53%) patients underwent adjuvant chemotherapy. Chemotherapy was not given to 13 patients with pathologic complete response after surgery or who had preoperative grade IV toxicity due to CRT. Grade V toxicity (sepsis) was seen in only 1 patient after three cycles of chemotherapy. Adjuvant treatment was terminated prematurely in 2 patients due to grade IV hematologic toxicity.

DISCUSSION

Despite the continuous search for effective multidisciplinary treatment protocols, patients diagnosed with rectum cancer remain a high-risk population for local and distant recurrence. This study provided encouraging results with neoadjuvant HART plus chemotherapy.

A variety of preoperative RT regimens is used in patients with rectum cancer, and conventional RT (45-50 Gy/5 wk) represents the standard regimen for preoperative concurrent CRT. While a statistically significant advantage in terms of local recurrence rates was reported in 14 previous studies examining this regimen, a survival advantage could be shown in only 2 studies for preoperative RT^[9,19]. In these studies, patients with early stage disease (I) and no requirement for preoperative CRT represented the majority of the participants. In a Polish study comparing short-term preoperative RT and conventional CRT, a statistically significant superiority of CRT was observed in terms of complete response rates ($P < 0.0001$); however, no difference was found in local control and survival^[20]. In a randomized study from France comparing preoperative RT and CRT, better pathologic complete response rate (11.4% vs 3.6%, $P < 0.0001$) and reduced local recurrence (8% vs 16.5%, $P < 0.051$) were observed in the CRT arm^[10]. In the similarly designed EORTC 22921 study, lower local recurrence was demonstrated in the CRT arm ($P < 0.001$)^[21].

Several phase II studies administering HART alone or with concurrent chemotherapy have also been performed^[22-28]. In the HART study by Bouzourene *et al.*^[29] none of the patients had complete response and 8% of the patients had local remission. In another study by Voelter *et al.*^[23] examining HART and CT, the reported positive circumferential resection margin was 21% and local control was 100%. In our study, radial surgical margin positivity was 7%, and after a median follow-up of 60-mo the local control rate was 97%. Local recurrence was seen in only 1 patient preoperatively staged as T3N1 and the radial surgical margin was pathologically positive in this patient. In contrast with a phase II study by Marsh *et al.*^[26], where 17 patients receiving preoperative capecitabine and HART had a complete response of 18%, the complete response rate was 21% (grade IV) and the

Table 4 Studies investigating hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy regimen for locally advanced rectal cancer

Study	Number of patients	Design	Follow-up (mo)	Total RT dose	Intervals (wk)	Concomitant chemotherapy	pCR ¹	Local control	Down-staging
Coucke <i>et al</i> ^[24] 2006	250	Prospective	39 mo	41.6 Gy/1.6 Gy	1 wk	None	1.20%	91.70%	38%
Ceelen <i>et al</i> ^[22] 2007	50 vs 91	Prospective	67 mo vs 28 mo	41.6 Gy/1.6 Gy vs 45 Gy/1.8 Gy	13 d vs 6 wk	None vs 5-FU bolus chemotherapy	4% vs 18%	94% vs 95.6%	30% vs 51%
Voelter <i>et al</i> ^[23] 2006	33	Prospective	104 mo	41.6 Gy/1.6 Gy	1wk	CPT-11	NA	100%	33%
Brooks <i>et al</i> ^[42] 2006	20	Prospective	31 mo	25 Gy/1.67 Gy (CHART)	1 wk	None	NA	95%	NA
Widder <i>et al</i> ^[43] 2005	184	Prospective	43 mo	25 Gy/2.5 Gy	1 wk	None	NA	97.90%	NA
Bouzourene <i>et al</i> ^[29] 2003	104	Prospective	40 mo	41.6 Gy/1.6 Gy	1 wk	None	0%	92.30%	43%
Marsh <i>et al</i> ^[26] 2010	17	Prospective	NA	50.4-55.2 Gy/1.2 Gy	4-6 wk	Capcitabine 825 mg/m ² -twice per day	18.80%	NA	81.25%
The present study	30	Prospective	60 mo	42 Gy/1.5 Gy	6-8 wk	5-FU (325 mg/m ²) continuous infusion	21%	96.70%	59%

¹Pathological complete response; NA: Not available; RT: Radiotherapy; pCR: Pathological complete response.

Table 5 Biological equivalent doses^[44]

Regimen	Tumor control/acute normal tissue complication probability		Late normal tissue complication probability
	Bed (Gy) ($\alpha/\beta = 10$ Gy)		Bed (Gy) ($\alpha/\beta = 3$ Gy)
	No time correction	With time correction	
25 Gy/5 fr/5 d (d = 5 Gy)	37.5	37.5	66.7
50 Gy/25 fr/33 d (d = 2 Gy)	60.0	44.4	83.4
42 Gy/28 fr/18 d (d = 1.5 Gy)	48.3	41.7	63.0

Equation 1: Linear quadratic based isoeffect, basic formula without time correction, $BED = nd(1+d/\alpha/\beta)$, where n = number of fractions, d = dose (Gy) per fraction, α/β = the LQ quotient, Equation 2: Time-corrected LQ- formula, $BED = nd(1+d/\alpha/\beta) - \gamma/\alpha(T - Tk)$, where γ/α = repair rate (set to 0.6 Gy/d), T = overall treatment time and Tk = proliferation delay (set to 7 d, or maximally T).

near-complete response rate was 31% (grade III) among our participants. Studies with HART regimen are shown in Table 4.

The primary aim of this study was to search for possible therapeutic strategies that may help increase the rate of pathological tumor response and to decrease late side effects. In the regimen examined herein, decreased fraction size and shortened total treatment duration were hypothesized to result in decreased late and early side effects, respectively. Treatment duration and doses were different from those administered in conventional RT schemes. Therefore, a biological effective dose formula was used for dose calculations instead of the given dose, according to a time-corrected linear quadratic model^[30,31]. Biological equivalent doses are shown in Table 5.

In this study combining HART and concurrent chemotherapy, 8 patients developed (26.6%) CRT-related grade III-IV toxicity. Although there was an increase in acute reactions, these effects were generally tolerable and RT was completed without interruption in all patients. In 4 patients, chemotherapy was interrupted shortly due to chemotherapy-related acute side effects.

Toxicity was increased as a result of combined use of chemotherapy and RT regimen together with a higher chemotherapy dose as compared to conventional chemotherapy. The highest incidence of side effects was observed at weeks 3 and 4, which correspond to the development of acute mucosal side effects.

In addition, there is some literature data available on early side effects in rectum cancer patients treated with neoadjuvant conventional CRT. For example, in the EORTC 22921 study, grade III-IV toxicity occurred in 14% of the patients^[21]. In that study, the probable cause of increased side effects was the total treatment duration and impaired tissue repair as a consequence of shorter intervals between fractions of the chosen HART regimen. In a retrospective study where neoadjuvant CRT and HART alone were compared, no grade III-IV toxicity was reported in the HART arm of the study^[22]. In the Phase II 93-01 study, patients were treated with neoadjuvant HART with no significant increase in acute side effects^[32]. In another phase II study with preoperative HART and concurrent irinotecan (CPT-11), addition of chemotherapy was associated with an increase in grade III-IV toxicity^[23],

while the most common grade III-IV side effects observed in this study included diarrhea (24%) and infection (9%). In that phase II study, early side effects were more frequent than in our study. Probably, reduced incidence of diarrhea in this study could be explained on the basis of sparing the bowel volume out of the RT field.

Bowel perforation occurring in 2 of our patients raises the question of whether a period of 4 wk allows adequate time with normal tissue recovery following an intensive therapy regimen with neoadjuvant HART and concurrent chemotherapy. 5-FU is known to affect the repair mechanism in intestinal cells^[33] and the 5-FU dose used in this study might have played a role in the development of perforation in 2 of our patients.

The ideal duration between neoadjuvant therapy and surgery remains a source of debate. The objective of early surgery following short-term RT is to reduce or prevent long-term side effects. However, delayed surgery has been reported to result in increased rates of tumor regression and pathological complete response. In randomized studies utilizing short-term preoperative RT, the time between RT and surgery is relatively short^[19,34], posing some challenges in the interpretation of the effects of the timing of surgery following RT. Early and delayed surgery were compared in the Stockholm III study where local control, DFS and OS were found to be similar in between three arms^[35]. In the randomized Istanbul R-01 study examining the ideal timing for surgery after preoperative CRT, no significant associations were observed between the time-to-surgery and regression rates or local control rates. Surgical margin seems to be the most important factor for local recurrence^[36].

In our study, no surgery-related deaths occurred (0/29). In a phase II study utilizing HART and concurrent CPT-11, the postoperative complication rate was 27%, similar to other neoadjuvant CRT studies^[23]. Operative complications were recorded in 7% of the cases in this study. Occurrence of late toxicity only in 1 patient suggests that the strategy of utilizing HART to reduce late toxicity may prove to be successful. While no late side effects were observed in the 91-10 study with preoperative HART^[37], in another study comparing conventional CRT with HART alone, late side effects were more frequently observed in the HART arm^[22].

In this study, the ability of the HART regimen to achieve a higher tumor regression rate due to decreasing tumor repopulation was examined. In this regard, complete and near-complete response was achieved in 21% and 31% of the participants, respectively. In a previous study comparing HART alone vs conventional CRT regimens, lower complete response rates observed in the HART arm underscores the additive effect of chemotherapy^[22]. Similarly, in the French and EORTC studies comparing conventional RT and CRT, the reported pathological complete response rates in the CRT arm were 11.4% and 14%, respectively^[38,39]. In our study, HART with concurrent

chemotherapy was found to achieve complete or near-complete tumor regression in 52% of the patients. Preoperative HART scheme appeared to be capable of increasing tumor response and local control rates, but no difference was found for OS in phase II studies^[22]. This study showed no survival benefit despite a high pathological response rate. A study by Petrelli *et al*^[36,40] and randomized Istanbul R-01 study did not find any correlation between pathological complete response rate and survival.

Circumferential (lateral) margin positivity was found in 2 patients, whereas only 1 patient showed local recurrence during a median follow-up period of 60 mo. Thirteen patients had distant metastases. Extensive hepatic metastases were found in early phase in 3 patients who died due to systemic disease.

In conclusion, earlier studies have proven the feasibility of HART treatment in terms of early and late side effects in this patient population. As in our study, improved local control rates and tumor regression may be achieved with HART but with higher toxicity. Toxicity could be reduced by giving chronomodulated concomitant capecitabine in Brunch Study^[41]. A plausible option would be to reduce the dose of 5-FU to reduce toxicity.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Currently, preoperative chemoradiation (CRT) is the preferred treatment regimen in locally advanced rectal cancer patients, owing to low local recurrence rates and higher chance of sphincter-sparing surgery. Besides conventional radiotherapy consisting of 45-50 Gy/1.8-2 Gy/5-6 wk, other radiotherapy schemes are also used. The hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy (HART) scheme reduces the risk of repopulation in tumor cells by shortening the treatment time and increases the repair capacity of normal tissues. In this background, a HART scheme and the combination of infusional 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) was examined in this study to augment the pathological complete response.

Research motivation

Local recurrence is still a substantial problem for locally advanced rectal cancers. Investigating tolerability and the effect of different radiotherapy schemes on local control other than conventional and hypofractionated radiotherapy can be a solution.

Research objectives

This study was mainly designed to observe the early and late effects of HART regimen in combination with neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients diagnosed with locally advanced rectal cancer. The primary aim of this study was to search for possible therapeutic strategies that may help increase the rate of pathological tumor response and to decrease late side effects.

Research methods

Previously untreated locally advanced rectal cancer patients with histological confirmation were included in the study. The patients were clinically staged according to positron emission-computed tomography and pelvic-diffusion magnetic resonance imaging. All patients received preoperative HART (42 Gy/1.5 Gy/18 d/bid) and concurrent continuous infusion of 5-FU (325 mg/m²) and were hospitalized during treatments to observe the possible acute side effects. Total mesorectal excision was performed 4-8 wk after the completion of chemoradiotherapy. Four cycles of 5-FU (400 mg/m², D1-5, q 28 d) plus folinic acid (20 mg/m², D1-5, q 28 d) were administered postoperatively. The primary

endpoint was pathological response rate after CRT, and secondary endpoints included the local control rate, surgical margin positivity, survival and toxicity.

Research results

Thirty patients were included between October 2007 and March 2009. The median age was 53 years. Most of the patients clinically staged as T3N+ disease (90%). Surgery was performed at week 4 in half of the patients. Twelve patients (41%) underwent sphincter-sparing surgery. The Dworak total regression scoring system was used to evaluate pathological response, and grade IV (total) regression was found in 6 of 29 (21%) patients; nine patients (31%) had grade III (near total) regression. Positive margins were found in 2 patients (6.6%). One (3.3%) patient had local recurrence during a median follow-up of 60 mo. The 5-year disease-free survival rate was 53%, while the 5-year overall survival rate was 53.1%. There were no interruptions in RT due to toxicity, while in 4 patients chemotherapy was interrupted for 1 wk. Sixteen (53%) patients underwent adjuvant chemotherapy.

Research conclusions

Improved local control rates and tumor regression may be achieved with HART but with higher acute toxicity. Toxicity could be reduced by giving chronomodulated concomitant chemotherapy or reducing the dose of 5-FU. Surgery timing has no effect on survival but still should be considered because of increased acute side effects due to HART fractionation. Besides an increased pathological response rate, this study showed no survival benefit.

Research perspectives

Different HART schemes can be examined with concomitant chemotherapy in the future studies. Because of the high incidence of acute toxicity, fraction dose and chemotherapy doses should be designed properly for new studies.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Bosset JF**, Arbez-Gindre F, Pelissier E, Manton G, Camelot G, Gillet M, Oppermann A, Bourgeois P, Schraub S. Anatomicopathological factors in the prognosis of rectal cancers. A mono- and multifactorial study. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 1986; **10**: 728-735 [PMID: 3803807]
- 2 **Minsky BD**, Mies C, Recht A, Rich TA, Chaffey JT. Resectable adenocarcinoma of the rectosigmoid and rectum. I. Patterns of failure and survival. *Cancer* 1988; **61**: 1408-1416 [PMID: 3345493 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19880401)61:7<1408::AID-CNCR2820610722>3.0.CO;2-A]
- 3 **Balslev I**, Pedersen M, Teglbjaerg PS, Hanberg-Soerensen F, Bone J, Jacobsen NO, Overgaard J, Sell A, Bertelsen K, Hage E. Postoperative radiotherapy in Dukes' B and C carcinoma of the rectum and rectosigmoid. A randomized multicenter study. *Cancer* 1986; **58**: 22-28 [PMID: 3518912 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19860701)58:1<22::AID-CNCR2820580106>3.0.CO;2-Q]
- 4 **Duncan W**. Adjuvant radiotherapy in rectal cancer: the MRC trials. *Br J Surg* 1985; **72** Suppl: S59-S62 [PMID: 3899263 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800721333]
- 5 **Gérard A**, Buyse M, Nordlinger B, Loygue J, Pène F, Kempf P, Bosset JF, Gignoux M, Arnaud JP, Desai C. Preoperative radiotherapy as adjuvant treatment in rectal cancer. Final results of a randomized study of the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC). *Ann Surg* 1988; **208**: 606-614 [PMID: 3056288 DOI: 10.1097/0000658-198811000-00011]
- 6 **Horn A**, Morild I, Dahl O. Tumour shrinkage and down staging after preoperative radiation of rectal adenocarcinomas. *Radiother Oncol* 1990; **18**: 19-28 [PMID: 2193318]
- 7 **Rider WD**, Palmer JA, Mahoney LJ, Robertson CT. Preoperative irradiation in operable cancer of the rectum: report of the Toronto trial. *Can J Surg* 1977; **20**: 335-338 [PMID: 871980]
- 8 Preoperative short-term radiation therapy in operable rectal carcinoma. A prospective randomized trial. Stockholm Rectal Cancer Study Group. *Cancer* 1990; **66**: 49-55 [PMID: 2191763 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19900701)66:1<49::AID-CNCR2820660111>3.0.CO;2-1]
- 9 **Swedish Rectal Cancer Trial.**, Cedermark B, Dahlberg M, Glimelius B, Pählman L, Rutqvist LE, Wilking N. Improved survival with preoperative radiotherapy in resectable rectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **336**: 980-987 [PMID: 9091798 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199704033361402]
- 10 **Compton CC**, Fielding LP, Burgart LJ, Conley B, Cooper HS, Hamilton SR, Hammond ME, Henson DE, Hutter RV, Nagle RB, Nielsen ML, Sargent DJ, Taylor CR, Welton M, Willett C. Prognostic factors in colorectal cancer. College of American Pathologists Consensus Statement 1999. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2000; **124**: 979-994 [PMID: 10888773]
- 11 **Gastrointestinal Tumor Study Group.** Prolongation of the disease-free interval in surgically treated rectal carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 1985; **312**: 1465-1472 [PMID: 2859523 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198506063122301]
- 12 **Cammà C**, Giunta M, Fiorica F, Pagliaro L, Craxi A, Cottone M. Preoperative radiotherapy for resectable rectal cancer: A meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2000; **284**: 1008-1015 [PMID: 10944647 DOI: 10.1001/jama.284.8.1008]
- 13 **Colorectal Cancer Collaborative Group.** Adjuvant radiotherapy for rectal cancer: a systematic overview of 8,507 patients from 22 randomised trials. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 1291-1304 [PMID: 11684209 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(01)06409-1]
- 14 **Thames HD Jr**, Peters LJ, Withers HR, Fletcher GH. Accelerated fractionation vs hyperfractionation: rationales for several treatments per day. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1983; **9**: 127-138 [PMID: 6833014 DOI: 10.1016/0360-3016(83)90089-5]
- 15 **Marsh RD**, Chu NM, Vauthey JN, Mendenhall WM, Lauwers GY, Bewsher C, Copeland EM. Preoperative treatment of patients with locally advanced unresectable rectal adenocarcinoma utilizing continuous chronobiologically shaped 5-fluorouracil infusion and radiation therapy. *Cancer* 1996; **78**: 217-225 [PMID: 8673995 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0142(19960715)78:2<217::AID-CNCR5>3.0.CO;2-I]
- 16 **Cox JD**, Stetz J, Pajak TF. Toxicity criteria of the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG) and the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC). *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1995; **31**: 1341-1346 [PMID: 7713792 DOI: 10.1016/0360-3016(95)00060-C]
- 17 **Dworak O**, Keilholz L, Hoffmann A. Pathological features of rectal cancer after preoperative radiochemotherapy. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1997; **12**: 19-23 [PMID: 9112145 DOI: 10.1007/s003840050072]
- 18 **Greene FL**, Page DL, Fleming ID. AJCC (American Joint Committee on Cancer) cancer staging manual, 2002. Springer-Verlag, New York [DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4757-3656-4]
- 19 Randomized study on preoperative radiotherapy in rectal carcinoma. Stockholm Colorectal Cancer Study Group. *Ann Surg Oncol* 1996; **3**: 423-430 [PMID: 8876883 DOI: 10.1007/BF02305759]
- 20 **Bujko K**, Nowacki MP, Nasierowska-Guttmejer A, Michalski W, Bebenek M, Kryj M. Long-term results of a randomized trial comparing preoperative short-course radiotherapy with preoperative conventionally fractionated chemoradiation for rectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2006; **93**: 1215-1223 [PMID: 16983741 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5506]
- 21 **Bosset JF**, Collette L, Calais G, Mineur L, Maingon P, Radosevic-Jelic L, Daban A, Bardet E, Beny A, Ollier JC; EORTC Radiotherapy Group Trial 22921. Chemotherapy with preoperative radiotherapy in rectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 1114-1123 [PMID: 16971718 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa060829]
- 22 **Ceelen W**, Boterberg T, Pattyn P, van Eijkeren M, Gillardin JM, Demetter P, Smeets P, Van Damme N, Monsaert E, Peeters M. Neoadjuvant chemoradiation versus hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy in locally advanced rectal cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2007; **14**: 424-431 [PMID: 17096057 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-006-9102-0]
- 23 **Voelter V**, Zouhair A, Vuilleumier H, Matter M, Bouzourene H, Leyvraz S, Bauer J, Coucke P, Stupp R. CPT-11 and concomitant hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy induce efficient local control in rectal cancer patients: results from a phase II. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **95**: 710-716 [PMID: 16940980 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603322]
- 24 **Coucke PA**, Notter M, Stamm B, Matter M, Fasolini F, Schlumpf R,

- Matzinger O, Bouzourene H; All Surgeons From Public Hospitals And Private Clinics. Preoperative hyper-fractionated accelerated radiotherapy (HART) in locally advanced rectal cancer (LARC) immediately followed by surgery. A prospective phase II trial. *Radiother Oncol* 2006; **79**: 52-58 [PMID: 16564590 DOI: 10.1016/j.radonc.2006.02.004]
- 25 **Suwinski R**, Wydmanski J, Pawelczyk I, Starzewski J. A pilot study of accelerated preoperative hyperfractionated pelvic irradiation with or without low-dose preoperative prophylactic liver irradiation in patients with locally advanced rectal cancer. *Radiother Oncol* 2006; **80**: 27-32 [PMID: 16730087 DOI: 10.1016/j.radonc.2006.05.001]
- 26 **Marsh Rde W**, George TJ, Siddiqui T, Mendenhall WM, Zlotecki RA, Grobmyer S, Hochwald S, Chang M, Larson B, King J. A phase II trial of neoadjuvant capecitabine combined with hyperfractionated accelerated radiation therapy in locally advanced rectal cancer. *Am J Clin Oncol* 2010; **33**: 251-256 [PMID: 19823074]
- 27 **Allal AS**, Bieri S, Bründler MA, Soravia C, Gertsch P, Bernier J, Morel P, Roth AD. Preoperative hyperfractionated radiotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancers: a phase I-II trial. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2002; **54**: 1076-1081 [PMID: 12419434 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(02)03003-1]
- 28 **Nabhan C**, Ragam A, Samuels B, Milton DT, Prasad L, Hooberman A, Hartsell W, Anthony A, Weisman R, Bitran JD. Mitomycin-C/5-fluorouracil/leucovorin and hyperfractionated radiation therapy for rectal carcinoma: a phase II study with long-term follow-up. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2007; **6**: 436-441 [PMID: 17531107 DOI: 10.3816/CCC.2007.n.013]
- 29 **Bouzourene H**, Bosman FT, Matter M, Coucke P. Predictive factors in locally advanced rectal cancer treated with preoperative hyperfractionated and accelerated radiotherapy. *Hum Pathol* 2003; **34**: 541-548 [PMID: 12827607 DOI: 10.1016/S0046-8177(03)00176-X]
- 30 **Fowler JF**. The linear-quadratic formula and progress in fractionated radiotherapy. *Br J Radiol* 1989; **62**: 679-694 [PMID: 2670032 DOI: 10.1259/0007-1285-62-740-679]
- 31 **Jones B**, Dale RG. Mathematical models of tumour and normal tissue response. *Acta Oncol* 1999; **38**: 883-893 [PMID: 10606418 DOI: 10.1080/028418699432572]
- 32 **Coucke PA**, Notter M, Matter M, Fasolini F, Calmes JM, Schlumpf R, Schwegler N, Stamm B, Phuoc Do H, Bouzourene H. Effect of timing of surgery on survival after preoperative hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy (HART) for locally advanced rectal cancer (LARC): is it a matter of days? *Acta Oncol* 2006; **45**: 1086-1093 [PMID: 17118844 DOI: 10.1080/02841860600891317]
- 33 **Bozdag AD**, Peker Y, Derici H, Gürkök C, Özgönül M. The effect of preoperative 5-fluorouracil on colonic healing: an experimental study. *Hepato-gastroenterology* 2001; **48**: 1631-1634 [PMID: 11813589]
- 34 **Kapiteijn E**, Marijnen CA, Nagtegaal ID, Putter H, Steup WH, Wiggers T, Rutten HJ, Pahlman L, Glimelius B, van Krieken JH, Leer JW, van de Velde CJ; Dutch Colorectal Cancer Group. Preoperative radiotherapy combined with total mesorectal excision for resectable rectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 638-646 [PMID: 11547717 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa010580]
- 35 **Erlandsson J**, Holm T, Pettersson D, Berglund Å, Cedermark B, Radu C, Johansson H, Machado M, Hjern F, Hallböök O, Syk I, Glimelius B, Martling A. Optimal fractionation of preoperative radiotherapy and timing to surgery for rectal cancer (Stockholm III): a multicentre, randomised, non-blinded, phase 3, non-inferiority trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 336-346 [PMID: 28190762 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30086-4]
- 36 **Saglam S**, Bugra D, Saglam EK, Asoglu O, Balik E, Yamaner S, Basaran M, Oral EN, Kizir A, Kapran Y, Gulluoglu M, Sakar B, Bulut T. Fourth versus eighth week surgery after neoadjuvant radiochemotherapy in T3-4/N0+ rectal cancer: Istanbul R-01 study. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2014; **5**: 9-17 [PMID: 24490038 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2078-6891.2013.025]
- 37 **Coucke PA**, Sartorelli B, Cuttat JF, Jeanneret W, Gillet M, Mirimanoff RO. The rationale to switch from postoperative hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy to preoperative hyperfractionated accelerated radiotherapy in rectal cancer. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1995; **32**: 181-188 [PMID: 7721615 DOI: 10.1016/0360-3016(95)00549-E]
- 38 **Gerard J**, Bonnetain F, Conroy T. Preoperative (preop) radiotherapy (RT) + 5 FU/folinic acid (FA) in T3-4 rectal cancers: Results of the FFCD 9203 randomized trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 247S [DOI: 10.1200/jco.2005.23.16_suppl.3504]
- 39 **Bouliis-Wassif S**, Gerard A, Loygue J, Camelot D, Buyse M, Duez N. Final results of a randomized trial on the treatment of rectal cancer with preoperative radiotherapy alone or in combination with 5-fluorouracil, followed by radical surgery. Trial of the European Organization on Research and Treatment of Cancer Gastrointestinal Tract Cancer Cooperative Group. *Cancer* 1984; **53**: 1811-1818 [PMID: 6423263 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19840501)53:9<1811::AID-CNCR2820530902>3.0.CO;2-H]
- 40 **Petrelli F**, Borronovo K, Cabiddu M, Ghilardi M, Lonati V, Barni S. Pathologic complete response and disease-free survival are not surrogate endpoints for 5-year survival in rectal cancer: an analysis of 22 randomized trials. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2017; **8**: 39-48 [PMID: 28280607 DOI: 10.21037/jgo.2016.11.03.]
- 41 **Akgun Z**, Saglam S, Yucel S, Gural Z, Balik E, Cipe G, Yildiz S, Kilickap S, Okyar A, Kaytan-Saglam E. Neoadjuvant chronomodulated capecitabine with radiotherapy in rectal cancer: a phase II brunch regimen study. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2014; **74**: 751-756 [PMID: 25102935 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-014-2558-x]
- 42 **Brooks S**, Glynne-Jones R, Novell R, Harrison M, Brown K, Makris A. Short course continuous, hyperfractionated, accelerated radiation therapy (CHART) as preoperative treatment for rectal cancer. *Acta Oncol* 2006; **45**: 1079-1085 [PMID: 17118843 DOI: 10.1080/02841860600897900]
- 43 **Widder J**, Herbst F, Dobrowsky W, Schmid R, Pokrajac B, Jech B, Chiari C, Stift A, Maier A, Karner-Hanusch J, Teleky B, Wrba F, Jakesz R, Poetter R. Preoperative short-term radiation therapy (25 Gy, 2.5 Gy twice daily) for primary resectable rectal cancer (phase II). *Br J Cancer* 2005; **92**: 1209-1214 [PMID: 15785745 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602485]
- 44 **Glimelius B**. Rectal cancer irradiation. Long course, short course or something else? *Acta Oncol* 2006; **45**: 1013-1017 [PMID: 17118832 DOI: 10.1080/02841860601019413]

P- Reviewer: Avital S, Dirier A, Palacios-Eito A, Yeo SG
S- Editor: Kong JX **L- Editor:** Filipodia **E- Editor:** Wang CH



Comparison between laparoscopic and open surgery for large gastrointestinal stromal tumors: A meta-analysis

Jian-Xin Cui, Yun-He Gao, Hong-Qing Xi, Ai-Zhen Cai, Ke-Cheng Zhang, Ji-Yang Li, Bo Wei, Lin Chen

Jian-Xin Cui, Yun-He Gao, Hong-Qing Xi, Ai-Zhen Cai, Ke-Cheng Zhang, Ji-Yang Li, Bo Wei, Lin Chen, Department of General Surgery, Chinese PLA General Hospital, Beijing 100853, China

ORCID number: Jian-Xin Cui (0000-0002-7233-4590); Yun-He Gao (0000-0002-1848-2955); Hong-Qing Xi (0000-0002-0472-8299); Ai-Zhen Cai (0000-0002-4220-2546); Ke-Cheng Zhang (0000-0002-9257-5607); Ji-Yang Li (0000-0001-8810-9251); Bo Wei (0000-0002-2713-7926); Lin Chen (0000-0002-3507-673X).

Author contributions: Cui JX, Gao YH and Xi HQ contributed equally to this work; Wei B and Chen L conceived the project; Cui JX and Gao YH independently searched references and took charge of data extraction and statistical analysis; Xi HQ searched references and extracted the parameters from each study; Cai AZ, Zhang KC and Li JY participated in the manuscript revision; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Supported by National Program on Key Basic Research Project of China, No. 2014CBA02002; National Key Research and Development Plan, No. 2016YFC0905302; National Natural Science Foundation of China, Nos. 81672319 and 81602507; and Beijing Municipal Science and Technology Project, No. D131100005313010.

Conflict-of-interest statement: This work was presented as an e-poster at the 12th International Gastric Cancer Congress (IGCC), April 20-23, 2017. We have no financial relationship to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Lin Chen, MD, PhD, Professor, De-

partment of General Surgery, Chinese PLA General Hospital, 28 Fuxing Road, Beijing 100853, China. chenlin@301hospital.com.cn
Telephone: +86-10-66938128
Fax: +86-10-66938128

Received: October 23, 2017

Peer-review started: October 24, 2017

First decision: November 23, 2017

Revised: December 4, 2017

Accepted: December 6, 2017

Article in press: December 6, 2017

Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract

AIM

To investigate whether laparoscopic surgery is as safe and feasible as open resection for patients with larger gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) (≥ 5 cm).

METHODS

A systematic search of PubMed, EMBASE, Web of Science and the Cochrane Library database was performed. Relevant studies of laparoscopic and open surgery for GISTs of > 5 cm published before December 2016 were identified from these databases. The quality of the studies was assessed by the Newcastle-Ottawa Quality Assessment Scale. The tumor size, operation time, blood loss, postoperative hospital stay, complication rate, and disease-free survival rate were assessed. The software Stata (version 12.0) was used for the meta-analysis.

RESULTS

Five clinical trials comprising 209 patients with GISTs of similar larger sizes were evaluated. The pooled analysis of 100 patients in the laparoscopic resection group and 109 patients in the open resection group demonstrated that laparoscopic surgery was significantly associated with a shorter postoperative hospital stay ($P < 0.001$)

and less blood loss ($P = 0.002$). Moreover, there were no statistically significant differences in the operation time ($P = 0.38$), postoperative complication rate ($P = 0.88$), or disease-free survival rate ($P = 0.20$) between two groups.

CONCLUSION

Our findings revealed that for patients with large GISTs of comparable sizes, laparoscopic surgery did not significantly influence the operation factors or clinical outcomes compared with open surgery. This suggests that laparoscopic resection is as acceptable as open surgery for treatment of large gastric GISTs.

Key words: Laparoscopic resection; Open resection; Gastrointestinal stromal tumor; Meta-analysis; Clinical outcome

© The Author(s) 2018. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Whether laparoscopic resection is also effective and feasible for treatment of larger gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) (> 5 cm) remains unknown. This meta-analysis collected up-to-date clinical data of comparison of laparoscopic and open resection for larger gastric GISTs (> 5 cm). Our results showed that laparoscopic resection is an upgraded minimal invasive technique with a shorter postoperative hospital stay and less intraoperative blood loss compared with open surgery in treating patients with larger GISTs.

Cui JX, Gao YH, Xi HQ, Cai AZ, Zhang KC, Li JY, Wei B, Chen L. Comparison between laparoscopic and open surgery for large gastrointestinal stromal tumors: A meta-analysis. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 48-55 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/48.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.48>

INTRODUCTION

Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) are the most common gastrointestinal sarcomas. They usually arise from the interstitial cells of Cajal and regulate gastrointestinal motility^[1,2]. GISTs are often characterized by cellular markers such as CD117 (a receptor tyrosine kinase protein also known as tyrosine-protein kinase Kit). The stomach is the most prevalent location of GISTs, and the proximal stomach is involved in about two-thirds of suffering patients^[3]. It is well accepted that the malignant potential of GISTs depends on the tumor size, cell mitotic rate, and tumor location^[4].

Although substantial advances have been made in the targeted therapies for these tumors, surgical resection is still the most important component in the treatment of primary GISTs with no evidence of

metastasis. Because wide margins (> 5 cm) and lymph node dissection are not necessary in the surgical management of GISTs^[5], laparoscopic surgery seems to be more suitable for resection of these tumors. Various types of laparoscopic procedures for GISTs have been performed in a few specialized centers, including wedge resection of the stomach, intragastric tumor resection, and combined endoscopic-laparoscopic resection, *etc.* However, during laparoscopic surgery, these tumors must be handled with great care because rupture of their capsule confers a near 100% risk of recurrence.

Several studies and meta-analyses have shown that laparoscopic resection for gastric GISTs is as safe and efficacious as open surgery; additionally, laparoscopy is associated with less blood loss, less morbidity, and quicker recovery^[6-8]. The long-term survival of patients with GISTs mainly depends on the tumor progression, and laparoscopic surgery does not increase the risk of tumor relapse and metastasis. The clinical practice guidelines for the management of GISTs released by the National Comprehensive Cancer Network and the Japanese Study Group on GIST note that laparoscopic surgical resection is the preferred therapy for relatively small GISTs with a diameter of < 5 cm^[9].

However, most cohort studies have focused on laparoscopic surgery for relatively smaller tumors; few have been designed for evaluation of larger GISTs (> 5 cm)^[10-14]. Although the size limit was not clearly stated, the practice guideline of the European Society for Medical Oncology recommends application of laparoscopic procedures in patients with large GISTs^[15]. However, the complex surgical skills and long learning curve associated with laparoscopic surgery might prevent its application to larger GISTs to some extent^[16]. Therefore, the feasibility and safety of laparoscopic surgery for GISTs of > 5 cm remains unclear. Additionally, whether 5 cm is the most appropriate cutoff for performance of minimally invasive procedures in patients with larger GISTs remains controversial. This meta-analysis was performed to assess the short- and long-term results of patients with larger gastric GISTs (> 5 cm) undergoing laparoscopic surgery.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Literature search

Systematic electronic searches of PubMed, EMBASE, the Cochrane Library, the Clinical Trials Database, Web of Science, and Google Scholar were performed to identify relevant articles published up to 30 December 2016, utilizing the following search terms: "gastrointestinal stromal tumor," "GIST," "laparoscopic," "laparoscopy," "open resection," "gastrectomy," and "stomach". Citations and references of identified studies were also reviewed for additional literature and trials. The language of the publications was limited to English.

Table 1 Main characteristics of enrolled trials

Ref.	Region	Year	Study design	Study period	Sample size		Tumor size (cm)		CS	Follow-up (mo)
					LAP	Open	LAP	Open		
Kim <i>et al</i> ^[10]	South Korea	2012	OCS (R)	1998-2011	24	14	6.1 ± 1.3	7.2 ± 1.7	0	49.3 (8.4-164.4)
Lin <i>et al</i> ^[11]	China	2014	OCS (R)	2007-2012	23	23	7.2 ± 1.6	7.3 ± 1.5	1	34.0 (6-78)
Hsiao <i>et al</i> ^[12]	Taiwan	2015	OCS (P)	2002-2012	18	37	6.1 ± 1.0	6.0 ± 0.9	0	43.2 (16.8-133.2)
Takahashi <i>et al</i> ^[13]	Japan	2015	OCS (R)	1995-2011	12	15	7.5 ± 1.9	5.5 ± 0.73	3	63 (7-154)
Khoo <i>et al</i> ^[14]	Japan	2016	OCS (R)	2002-2015	23	36	NA	NA	1	45

OCS: Observational clinical study; R: Retrospective study; P: Prospective study; NA: Not available; CS: Conventional surgery.

Study selection

The inclusion criteria were as follows: (1) The studies involved patients with gastric GISTs larger than 5 cm; (2) The specific interventions were laparoscopic and open surgical resection; (3) The clinical outcomes were the operation time, intraoperative blood loss, conversion rate, length of hospital stay, adverse events, and long-term outcomes (overall survival, disease-specific survival, or recurrence rate); (4) Controlled studies (randomized controlled trials, cohort studies, and case-control studies) were included for the pooled analysis. However, case reports and case series were included for the systematic review; and (5) The informative data and full text of the articles were available.

The exclusion criteria were as follows: (1) The patients had GISTs that were located outside of the stomach or complicated with mixed disease; (2) Duplicate publications; (3) the size of the GIST was not specifically stated; (4) The article was a case report or review; and (5) The publication was in a language other than English.

Data extraction and management

Two reviewers independently screened the titles and abstracts of the publications. Once deemed acceptable, the whole manuscripts were obtained and screened. Controversial issues were resolved by discussion or referred to a third reviewer. Another two reviewers independently extracted the data using a unified form and resolved any discrepancies through discussion. The variables of interest included the author, study period, number of patients, tumor size, operation time, blood loss, length of postoperative hospital stay, complication rate, and long-term outcome (namely disease-free survival). In addition, if the original studies included the median, range, and size of a sample, we estimated the mean and variance using the methods described by Hozo *et al*^[12].

The quality of the included papers was assessed using the Newcastle-Ottawa Quality Assessment Scale^[17]. This scale ranges from 0 to 9 points; studies with a score of ≥ 6 were considered methodologically sound.

Statistical analysis

The meta-analysis was performed using weighted

mean differences (WMDs) for continuous variables, odds ratios for dichotomous variables, and hazard ratios for time-to-event variables. Statistical heterogeneity was assessed by performing χ^2 tests and calculating the Higgins I^2 statistic, and a value of $P < 0.10$ or $I^2 > 50\%$, indicated statistical significance. A fixed-effects model was generally employed. If the heterogeneity was statistically significant, a random-effects model was adopted. Publication bias was evaluated by Begg's test. A P value of < 0.05 was considered significant. Statistical analyses were performed using Stata software (version 12.0; StataCorp, College Station, TX, United States).

RESULTS

Enrolled studies and quality assessment

No eligible randomized controlled trials were identified, but 5 nonrandomized trials were analyzed (209 patients with GISTs of similar size). Overall, 100 patients underwent laparoscopic resection and 100 underwent open resection. A flow chart of the search strategy is illustrated in Figure 1. The main characteristics and quality assessment results of the included studies are shown in Tables 1 and 2, respectively.

Tumor size

Four studies reported no statistically significant differences in tumor size between the laparoscopy and open group, while Kim *et al*^[10] reported that the tumor size in the open group was significantly larger than that in the laparoscopy group. Additionally, in the pooled data from a fixed-effects model with no significant heterogeneity ($I^2 = 53.3\%$, $P = 0.073$) (Table 3), no significant difference was identified in the total analysis [WMD = -0.038 cm, 95% confidence interval (95%CI): -0.699 to 0.362, $P = 0.632$] (Figure 2).

Operative factors

All enrolled studies provided data for analysis of the operation time. The results showed no significant difference between the two groups (WMD = 7.17 min, 95%CI: -56.02 to 70.36, $P = 0.824$) (Figure 3A). Because obvious heterogeneity was detected ($I^2 = 92.9\%$, $P = 0.000$) (Table 3), a random-effects model was employed.

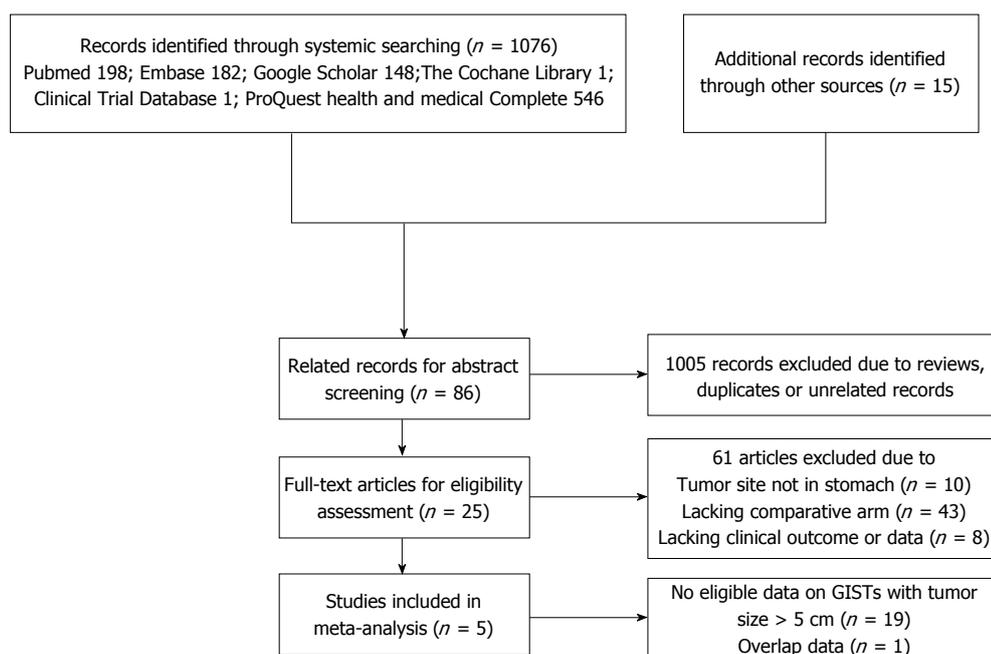


Figure 1 Flow chart of study selection process. GISTs: Gastrointestinal stromal tumors.

Table 2 Newcastle-Ottawa Scale Assessment of enrolled studies

Ref.	Selection (0-4)				Comparability		Outcome (0-3)			Total
	REC	Snec	AE	OINP	SCB	SCA	AO	FU	AFC	
Kim <i>et al</i> ^[10]	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	8
Lin <i>et al</i> ^[11]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	8
Hsiao <i>et al</i> ^[12]	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	8
Takahashi <i>et al</i> ^[13]	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	7
Khoo <i>et al</i> ^[14]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	9

REC: Representativeness of the exposed cohort; SNEC: Selection of the no exposed cohort; AE: Ascertainment of exposure; OINP: Outcome of interest not presented in the start of study; SCB: Study controls for basic characteristics; SCA: Study controls for additional factor; AO: Assessment of outcome; FU: Follow-up; AFC: Adequacy of follow up.

Table 3 Summary results of meta-analysis of clinical outcomes

Outcomes	No. of studies	Effect value	95%CI of effect	Heterogeneity	
				I ² (%)	P value
Tumor size	4	WMD = -0.0.38	-0.699 to 0.362	53.3	0.073
Operation time	5	WMD = 7.17 min	-56.02 to 70.36	92.9	0.000
Blood loss	4	WMD = -47.47 mL	-93.20 to -1.73	63.2	0.043
Postoperative complications	5	OR = 0.93	0.34 to 2.50	0.0	0.858
Postoperative stay	5	WMD = -2.81 d	-3.68 to -1.94	38.7	0.163
Progression-free survival	5	HR = 0.64	0.35 to 1.19	0.0	0.553

WMD: Weighted mean differences.

Four studies reported data regarding intraoperative blood loss; Lin *et al*^[11] reported that laparoscopic surgery was associated with less blood loss. The heterogeneity between the studies was significant ($I^2 = 63.2\%$, $P = 0.043$); therefore, the analysis was performed with a random-effects model. In the pooled data, a significant difference was found among these three groups (WMD = -47.47 mL, 95%CI: -93.20 to -1.73 mL, $P = 0.042$) (Figure 3B).

Among all enrolled studies, five patients in the

laparoscopy group reportedly underwent conversion to open surgery. One conversion resulted from the surgeons' initial learning curve for laparoscopy, one was due to dense adhesion to liver, and the other three occurred because of failure to secure the tumor in the visual field of the laparoscope.

Short-term outcomes

All five studies reported postoperative complications. The pooled data revealed no significant difference

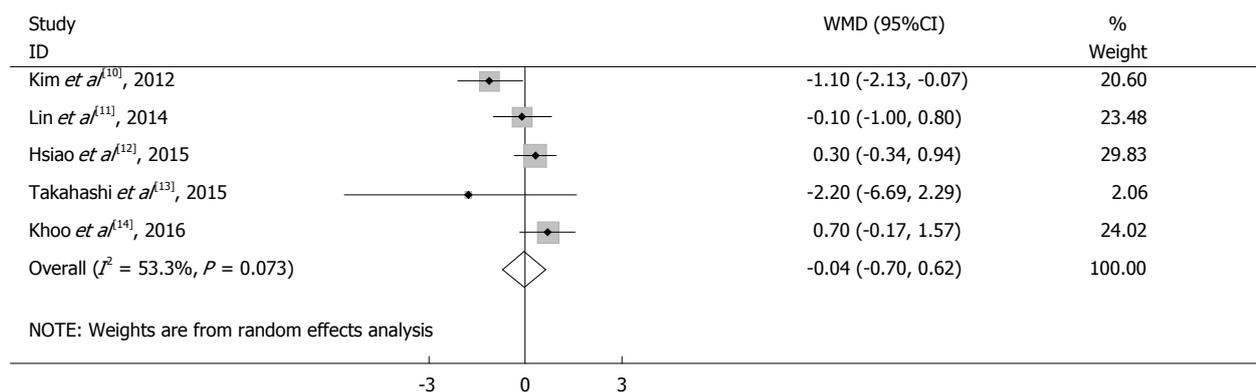


Figure 2 Meta-analysis of tumor size in laparoscopic surgery and open surgery groups.

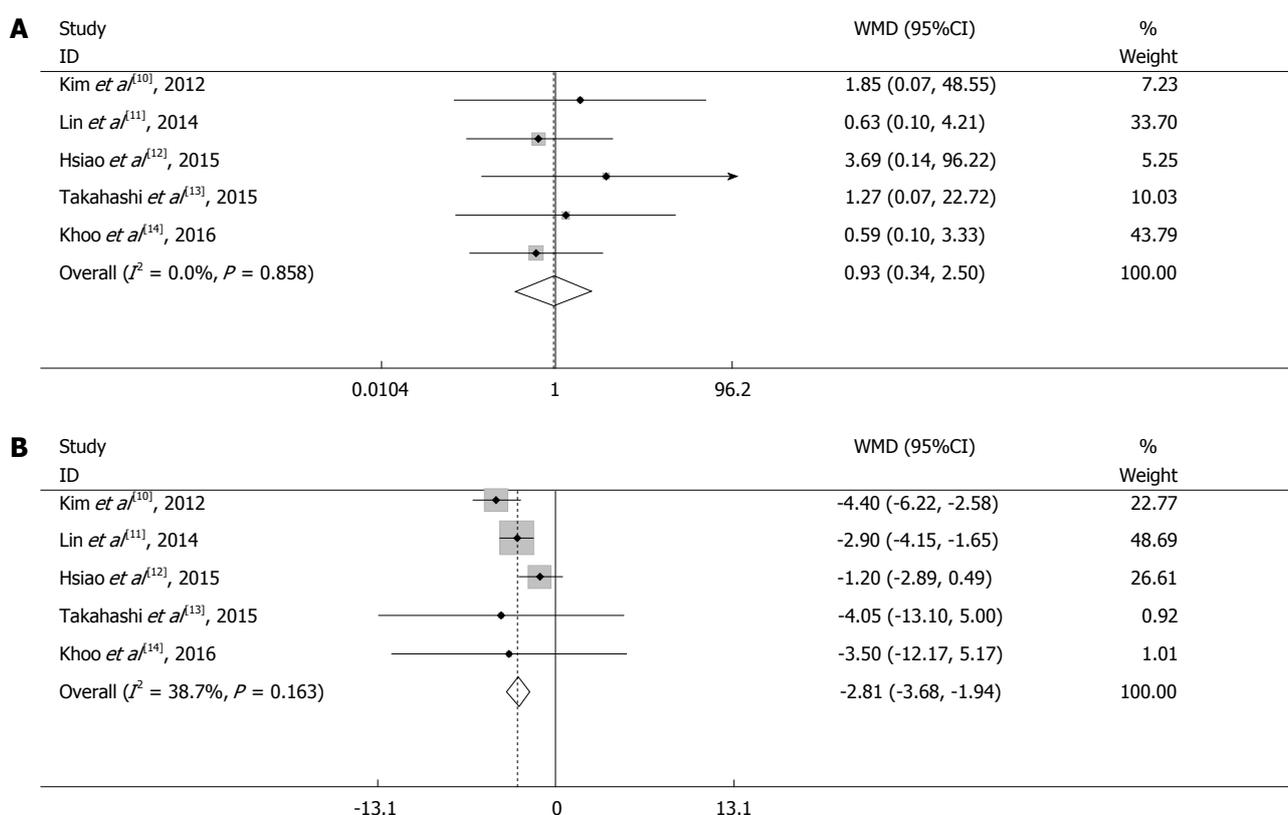


Figure 3 Meta-analysis of operative factors in laparoscopic surgery and open surgery group. A: Pooled analysis of operation time; B: Pooled analysis of blood loss.

between the two groups (odds ratio = 0.93, 95%CI: 0.34 to 2.50, $P = 0.88$) (Figure 4A). A fixed-effects model was used because of the lack of significant heterogeneity ($I^2 = 0.0\%$, $P = 0.858$).

Five studies reported data regarding the postoperative hospital stay. A fixed-effects model was employed because of insignificant heterogeneity ($I^2 = 38.7\%$, $P = 0.163$). The postoperative hospital stay was significantly shorter in the laparoscopy than open group (WMD = -2.81 d, 95%CI: -3.68 to -1.94, $P < 0.001$) (Figure 4B).

Long-term outcomes

All eligible studies reported the progression-free survival of patients. Figure 5 shows a forest plot of

disease-free survival and the results of the meta-analysis. No significant difference was observed in patients with larger GISTs who underwent laparoscopic vs open surgery (hazard ratio = 0.64, 95%CI: 0.35 to 1.19, $P = 0.157$). No obvious heterogeneity was observed in this study; therefore, a fixed-effects model was applied in the survival meta-analysis ($I^2 = 0.0\%$, $P = 0.553$) (Figure 5).

Publication bias

Publication bias was evaluated based on the postoperative hospital stay using Begg’s and Egger’s tests. No publication bias was identified in the five studies (Begg’s test, $P = 0.773$; Egger’s test, $P = 0.825$) (Figure 6).

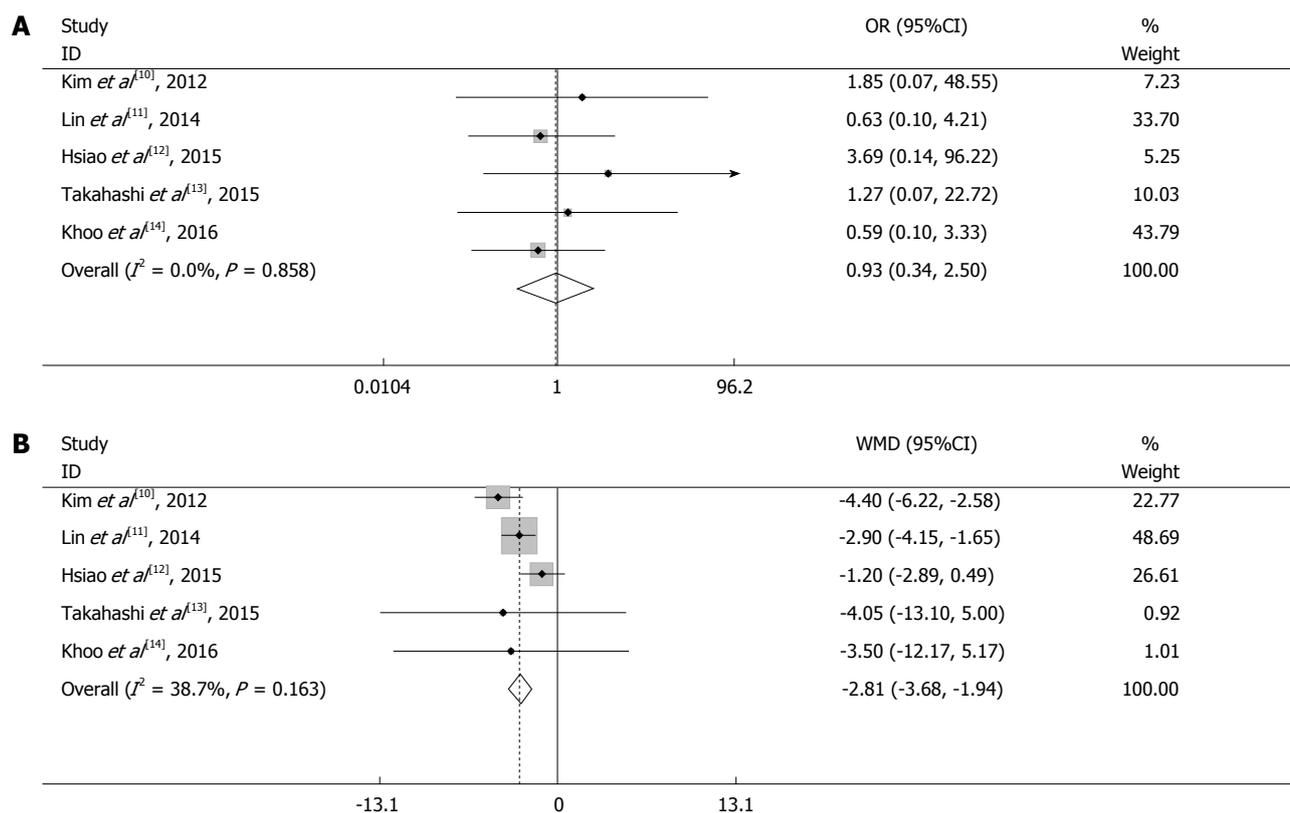


Figure 4 Meta-analysis of short-term outcomes in laparoscopic surgery and open surgery groups. A: Pooled analysis of postoperative complications; B: Pooled analysis of postoperative hospital stay.

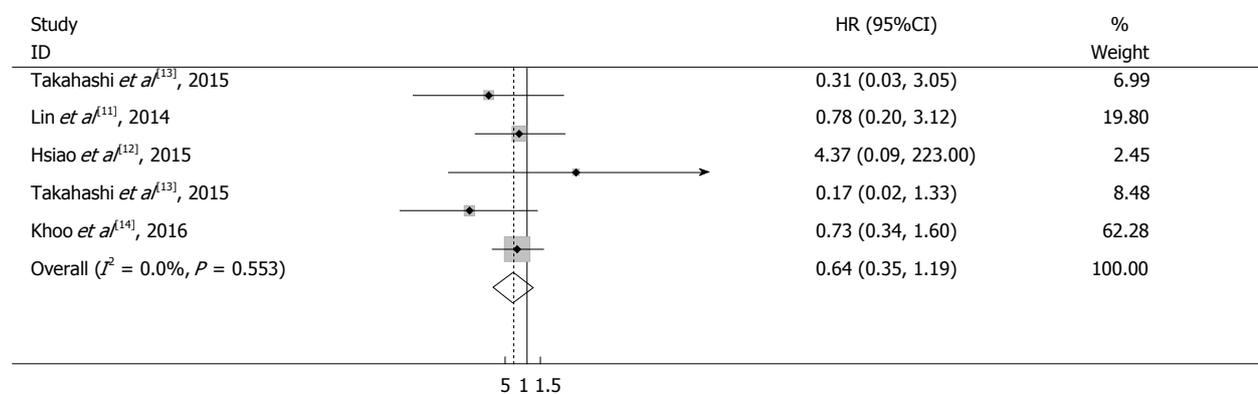


Figure 5 Meta-analysis of progression-free survival in laparoscopic surgery and open surgery groups.

DISCUSSION

Recent studies have suggested that the prognosis of GISTs is mainly based on the tumor size and histological features rather than achievement of wide resection margins^[18]. Therefore, laparoscopic resection is more frequently performed for treatment of patients with GISTs using the advances currently being made in surgical techniques.

Although randomized controlled trials are the first choice for high-quality meta-analyses, we failed to enroll any randomized controlled trials in this study. There are several obstacles to design and perform randomized controlled trials, such as ethical issues and organization

difficulty^[19]. Finally, five nonrandomized controlled studies (one prospective and four retrospective) were enrolled; all were assessed according to the Newcastle-Ottawa Quality Assessment Scale and scored > 6, ensuring their high quality.

Our pooled analysis demonstrated faster recovery and less blood loss in the laparoscopy than open surgery group. Less trauma caused by laparoscopic surgical intervention, only a mild acute inflammatory response, and earlier postoperative activities are considered to contribute to the shorter postoperative hospital stay. Although the blood loss volume might have varied according to the different methods used among the studies, the results of our work indicate

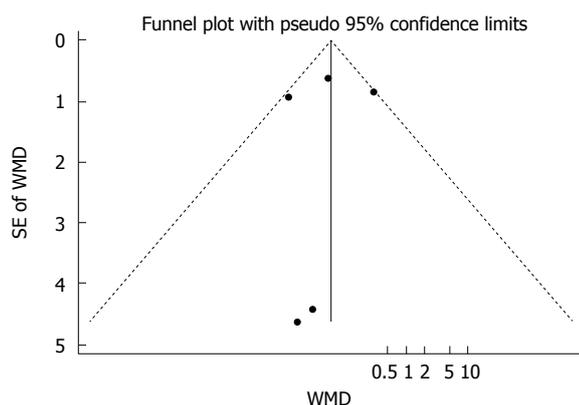


Figure 6 Funnel plot of postoperative hospital stay in laparoscopic surgery and open surgery groups. WMD: Weighted mean difference.

that laparoscopic surgery might reduce patients' surgical trauma to some extent. Furthermore, there was no difference in the postoperative complications between the two groups, adding to the safety of laparoscopic surgery in patients with larger GISTs.

Our review also indicated that laparoscopic resection for larger GISTs is feasible with a conversion rate of 5%, which is similar to other laparoscopic procedures such as laparoscopic gastrectomy^[20,21]. The oncological outcome is one of the most concerning problems that prevents application of laparoscopy to the surgical treatment of larger GISTs^[22]. Our results showed no difference in the disease-free survival of patients with larger GISTs who underwent laparoscopy vs open surgery (hazard ratio = 0.643, 95%CI: 0.349 to 1.185, $P = 0.157$), suggesting that the performance of a laparoscopic procedure does not profoundly influence the oncological outcome compared with open surgery.

Several limitations in our study should be addressed. First, the limited number of patients might affect the reliability of the results (209 patients across 5 studies). Second, most of the patients' tumor sizes ranged from 5 to 10 cm; therefore, the results might not be suitable for patients with GISTs of > 10 cm. Third, treatment of larger GISTs in laparoscopic surgery requires greater surgical skill to prevent tumor rupture and gain adequate resection margins. Therefore, the inclusion of single-center studies with various levels of surgical techniques might have contributed to the bias of our meta-analysis. Finally, the use of different risk classifications and drug therapies within the groups might have also contributed to the bias of recurrence or progression-free survival^[23].

In conclusion, this meta-analysis has demonstrated that laparoscopic surgery is as safe and feasible as open surgery for resection of larger GISTs (> 5 cm, mainly 5-10 cm). Moreover, laparoscopic surgery might offer the advantage of faster recovery and less trauma over open surgery in patients with GISTs. More multicenter randomized controlled clinical trials are needed to clarify and confirm the role of laparoscopic

surgery in patients with larger GISTs.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Laparoscopic resection of relatively small gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) is currently well-accepted and has been proven as safe and feasible as traditional open surgery. However, whether laparoscopic resection is also effective and feasible for treatment of larger gastric GISTs (> 5 cm) remains unknown.

Research motivation

The authors aimed to explore whether laparoscopic resection is also effective and feasible for treatment of larger gastric GISTs (> 5 cm), just as the same situation in smaller GISTs.

Research objectives

Laparoscopic resection for small GISTs is now well-accepted. However, whether laparoscopic surgery is as safe and feasible as open resection for patients with larger GISTs (≥ 5 cm) remains controversial.

Research methods

A systematic search of PubMed, EMBASE, Web of Science and the Cochrane Library database was performed. Relevant studies of laparoscopic and open surgery for GISTs of > 5 cm published before December 2016 were identified from these databases. The meta-analysis was performed using Stata (version 12.0) applying weighted mean differences for continuous variables, odds ratios for dichotomous variables, and hazard ratios for time-to-event variables.

Research results

In terms of operative and oncological factors, our research demonstrated that laparoscopic surgery was significantly associated with a shorter postoperative hospital stay ($P < 0.001$) and less blood loss ($P = 0.002$) in resecting larger GISTs. Moreover, there were no statistically significant differences in the operation time ($P = 0.38$), postoperative complication rate ($P = 0.88$), or disease-free survival rate ($P = 0.20$) between two groups.

Research conclusion

This research stands as the first meta-analysis focusing on this specific type of GISTs. The meta-analysis has demonstrated that laparoscopic surgery is as safe and feasible as open surgery for resection of larger GISTs (> 5 cm, mainly 5-10 cm). Moreover, laparoscopic surgery might offer the advantage of faster recovery and less trauma over open surgery in patients with GISTs.

Research perspectives

Laparoscopic resection is as acceptable as open surgery for treatment of large gastric GISTs.

REFERENCES

- Miettinen M, Majidi M, Lasota J. Pathology and diagnostic criteria of gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs): a review. *Eur J Cancer* 2002; **38** Suppl 5: S39-S51 [PMID: 12528772 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-8049(02)80602-5]
- Fletcher CD, Berman JJ, Corless C, Gorstein F, Lasota J, Longley BJ, Miettinen M, O'Leary TJ, Remotti H, Rubin BP, Shmookler B, Sobin LH, Weiss SW. Diagnosis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors: A consensus approach. *Hum Pathol* 2002; **33**: 459-465 [PMID: 12094370 DOI: 10.1053/hupa.2002.123545]
- Blanke CD, Corless CL. State-of-the art therapy for gastrointestinal stromal tumors. *Cancer Invest* 2005; **23**: 274-280 [PMID: 15945512 DOI: 10.1081/CNV-200055972]
- Lai IR, Lee WJ, Yu SC. Minimally invasive surgery for gastric stromal cell tumors: intermediate follow-up results. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2006; **10**: 563-566 [PMID: 16627222 DOI: 10.1016/j.gassur.2005.08.028]

- 5 **Goh BK**, Chow PK, Yap WM, Kesavan SM, Song IC, Paul PG, Ooi BS, Chung YF, Wong WK. Which is the optimal risk stratification system for surgically treated localized primary GIST? Comparison of three contemporary prognostic criteria in 171 tumors and a proposal for a modified Armed Forces Institute of Pathology risk criteria. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 2153-2163 [PMID: 18546045 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-9969-z]
- 6 **Goh BK**, Goh YC, Eng AK, Chan WH, Chow PK, Chung YF, Ong HS, Wong WK. Outcome after laparoscopic versus open wedge resection for suspected gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors: A matched-pair case-control study. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2015; **41**: 905-910 [PMID: 25913060 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2015.04.001]
- 7 **Goh BK**, Chow PK, Chok AY, Chan WH, Chung YF, Ong HS, Wong WK. Impact of the introduction of laparoscopic wedge resection as a surgical option for suspected small/medium-sized gastrointestinal stromal tumors of the stomach on perioperative and oncologic outcomes. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 1847-1852 [PMID: 20407770 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-010-0590-5]
- 8 **Choi SM**, Kim MC, Jung GJ, Kim HH, Kwon HC, Choi SR, Jang JS, Jeong JS. Laparoscopic wedge resection for gastric GIST: long-term follow-up results. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2007; **33**: 444-447 [PMID: 17174060 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2006.11.003]
- 9 **Demetri GD**, Benjamin RS, Blanke CD, Blay JY, Casali P, Choi H, Corless CL, Debiec-Rychter M, DeMatteo RP, Ettinger DS, Fisher GA, Fletcher CD, Gronchi A, Hohenberger P, Hughes M, Joensuu H, Judson I, Le Cesne A, Maki RG, Morse M, Pappo AS, Pisters PW, Raut CP, Reichardt P, Tyler DS, Van den Abbeele AD, von Mehren M, Wayne JD, Zalcberg J; NCCN Task Force. NCCN Task Force report: management of patients with gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST)—update of the NCCN clinical practice guidelines. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2007; **5** Suppl 2: S1-S29; quiz S30 [PMID: 17624289]
- 10 **Kim KH**, Kim MC, Jung GJ, Kim SJ, Jang JS, Kwon HC. Long term survival results for gastric GIST: is laparoscopic surgery for large gastric GIST feasible? *World J Surg Oncol* 2012; **10**: 230 [PMID: 23114111 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7819-10-230]
- 11 **Lin J**, Huang C, Zheng C, Li P, Xie J, Wang J, Lu J. Laparoscopic versus open gastric resection for larger than 5 cm primary gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST): a size-matched comparison. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 2577-2583 [PMID: 24853837 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-014-3506-x]
- 12 **Hozo SP**, Djulbegovic B, Hozo I. Estimating the mean and variance from the median, range, and the size of a sample. *BMC Med Res Methodol* 2005; **5**: 13 [PMID: 15840177 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2288-5-13]
- 13 **Takahashi T**, Nakajima K, Miyazaki Y, Miyazaki Y, Kurokawa Y, Yamasaki M, Miyata H, Takiguchi S, Nishida T, Mori M, Doki Y. Surgical strategy for the gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) larger than 5 cm: laparoscopic surgery is feasible, safe, and oncologically acceptable. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2015; **25**: 114-118 [PMID: 24752159 DOI: 10.1097/SLE.000000000000039]
- 14 **Khoo CY**, Goh BKP, Eng AKH, Chan WH, Teo MCC, Chung AYF, Ong HS, Wong WK. Laparoscopic wedge resection for suspected large (≥ 5 cm) gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors. *Surg Endosc* 2017; **31**: 2271-2279 [PMID: 27631317 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-016-5229-7]
- 15 **ESMO / European Sarcoma Network Working Group.** Gastrointestinal stromal tumors: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23** Suppl 7: vii49-vii55 [PMID: 22997454 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds252]
- 16 **Fox AM**, Pitzul K, Bhojani F, Kaplan M, Moulton CA, Wei AC, McGilvray I, Cleary S, Ukrainec A. Comparison of outcomes and costs between laparoscopic distal pancreatectomy and open resection at a single center. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 1220-1230 [PMID: 22179451 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-2061-y]
- 17 **Stang A.** Critical evaluation of the Newcastle-Ottawa scale for the assessment of the quality of nonrandomized studies in meta-analyses. *Eur J Epidemiol* 2010; **25**: 603-605 [PMID: 20652370 DOI: 10.1007/s10654-010-9491-z]
- 18 **Miettinen M**, El-Rifai W, H L Sobin L, Lasota J. Evaluation of malignancy and prognosis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors: a review. *Hum Pathol* 2002; **33**: 478-483 [PMID: 12094372 DOI: 10.1053/hupa.2002.124123]
- 19 **Chen QL**, Pan Y, Cai JQ, Wu D, Chen K, Mou YP. Laparoscopic versus open resection for gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Surg Oncol* 2014; **12**: 206 [PMID: 25022283 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7819-12-206]
- 20 **Moisan F**, Norero E, Slako M, Varas J, Palominos G, Crovari F, Ibañez L, Pérez G, Pimentel F, Guzmán S, Jarufe N, Boza C, Escalona A, Funke R. Completely laparoscopic versus open gastrectomy for early and advanced gastric cancer: a matched cohort study. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 661-672 [PMID: 22011940 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-1933-5]
- 21 **Sica GS**, Iaculli E, Biancone L, Di Carlo S, Scaramuzza R, Fiorani C, Gentileschi P, Gaspari AL. Comparative study of laparoscopic vs open gastrectomy in gastric cancer management. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 4602-4606 [PMID: 22147966 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i41.4602]
- 22 **Chen YH**, Liu KH, Yeh CN, Hsu JT, Liu YY, Tsai CY, Chiu CT, Jan YY, Yeh TS. Laparoscopic resection of gastrointestinal stromal tumors: safe, efficient, and comparable oncologic outcomes. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2012; **22**: 758-763 [PMID: 22957924 DOI: 10.1089/lap.2012.0115]
- 23 **Bhatt NR**, Collins D, Crotty P, Ridgway PF. Prognosis and management of adult wild type gastrointestinal stromal tumours (GISTs): A pooled analysis and review of literature. *Surg Oncol* 2016; **25**: 152-157 [PMID: 27566016 DOI: 10.1016/j.suronc.2016.05.003]

P- Reviewer: Tanabe S, Yuan Y **S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A
E- Editor: Wang CH



Leptomeningeal metastases originated from esophagogastric junction/gastric cancer: A brief report of two cases

Panteleimon Kountourakis, Demetris Papamichael, Haris Haralambous, Michael Michael, Georgios Nakos, Sylvia Lazaridou, Eleni Fotiou, Vassilios Vassiliou, Demetrios Andreopoulos

Panteleimon Kountourakis, Demetris Papamichael, Sylvia Lazaridou, Eleni Fotiou, Department of Medical Oncology, BOC Oncology Centre, Nicosia 2006, Cyprus

Haris Haralambous, Demetrios Andreopoulos, Department of Radiology, BOC Oncology Centre, Nicosia 2006, Cyprus

Michael Michael, Department of Cytology, General Hospital of Nicosia, Nicosia 2029, Cyprus

Georgios Nakos, Department of Pathology, General Hospital of Nicosia, Nicosia 2029, Cyprus

Vassilios Vassiliou, Demetrios Andreopoulos, Department of Radiation Oncology, BOC Oncology Centre, Nicosia 2029, Cyprus

ORCID number: Panteleimon Kountourakis (0000-0002-1134-6176); Demetris Papamichael (0000-0002-2643-5569); Haris Haralambous (0000-0002-3291-7847); Michael Michael (0000-0002-8275-7511); Georgios Nakos (0000-0003-3142-7261); Sylvia Lazaridou (0000-0003-0640-9627); Eleni Fotiou (0000-0002-6032-8855); Vassilios Vassiliou (0000-0002-1164-6531); Demetrios Andreopoulos (0000-0002-6959-4973).

Author contributions: Kountourakis P designed the case reports presentation; Kountourakis P, Papamichael D and Andreopoulos D participated in manuscript preparation, revision, patient's investigation and treatment; Haralambous H provided the CT-MRI images; Michael M provided the cytology images; Nakos G provided the pathology images; Lazaridou S, Fotiou E and Vassiliou V participated in patients' investigation and treatment.

Informed consent statement: Patients are deceased and verbal consents were obtained at the time of their hospitalization.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license,

which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Panteleimon Kountourakis, MD, PhD, Medical Oncology Department, BOC Oncology Centre, 32 Acropoleos Ave, Nicosia 2006, Cyprus. pantelis.kountourakis@bococ.org.cy
Telephone: +357-22-847402

Received: July 24, 2017

Peer-review started: July 26, 2017

First decision: September 11, 2017

Revised: November 28, 2017

Accepted: December 4, 2017

Article in press: December 4, 2017

Published online: January 15, 2018

Abstract

Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis is a very rare manifestation in patients diagnosed with esophagogastric junction and gastric cancer. Its prognosis is ominous and therapy outcomes are disappointing. Herein, we present two patients; one initially diagnosed with gastric cancer and leptomeningeal carcinomatosis but no other evidence of metastatic disease and the other one initially diagnosed with esophagogastric junction cancer, who recurred solitary with leptomeningeal seedings several years after the initial diagnosis and treatment. Furthermore, a thorough and short review of the literature is carried out.

Key words: Esophagogastric junction cancer; Gastric cancer; Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis; Prognosis; Investigation; Therapy

© The Author(s) 2018. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis (LMC) is related with ominous prognosis and the median survival varies between a few weeks to months. Even LMC is extremely rare in patients diagnosed with esophagogastric junction and gastric cancer, physicians should be alerted when neurological symptoms occurred, are persistent and could not be explained. A single diagnosis test procedure itself is not absolutely sensitive and the investigation algorithm may comprise a gadolinium enhanced brain magnetic resonance imaging and cerebrospinal fluid cytology tests.

Kountourakis P, Papamichael D, Haralambous H, Michael M, Nakos G, Lazaridou S, Fotiou E, Vassiliou V, Andreopoulos D. Leptomeningeal metastases originated from esophagogastric junction/gastric cancer: A brief report of two cases. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; 10(1): 56-61 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v10/i1/56.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v10.i1.56>

INTRODUCTION

Esophagogastric junction (EGJ) and gastric cancer (GC) constitute a major health issue worldwide and are often diagnosed in advanced stage with dismal prognosis^[1]. Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis (LMC) is defined as cancerous infiltration of the arachnoid membrane and the pia mater with devastating prognosis. Several routes of spread to meninges have been suggested; direct infiltration from bone metastases, *via* arteries and lymphatics, perineural and perivascular spaces, retrograde flow of Batson's venous plexus^[2]. Among cancer patients, it is most often related to breast and lung tumors, melanoma, leukemia and lymphoma^[3]. Only a few cases of EGJC and GC patients have been reported with LMC as an upfront disease manifestation. Most of the cases are presented several months or years after the initial diagnosis with synchronous diffuse disease spread. It is reported a 0.16%–0.69% of GC cases with LMC diagnosis, meanwhile it is clinically diagnosed in 2%–4% of all cancer patients^[4,5]. Herein, we present two patients with LMC and primary site diagnosis of EGJ and GC, respectively (Table 1).

CASE REPORT

Case 1

A 64-year-old female was referred to our Centre in September 2015. Her disease symptoms started almost 3 wk before with severe episodes of headache, dizziness visual and hearing loss (mainly right). From her past medical and family history nothing important to be mentioned. Initially, she was investigated by a computed tomography (CT) brain scan (Figure 1A) with no evidence of suspicious findings and pain

Table 1 Characteristics of patients diagnosed with leptomeningeal carcinomatosis

Characteristics	Case 1	Case 2
Age (yr)	64	57
Sex	Female	Male
Primary neoplasm	Stomach	EGJ
Histology	Adenocarcinoma gr III, signet ring cells	Adenocarcinoma gr III, signet ring cells
Disease status	Initial diagnosis	Recurrence
Systemic disease	None other than LMC	None other than LMC
Main neurological symptoms	Headache, dizziness, visual and hearing loss	Headache, dysphasia, temporary left side paresis
CSF cytology	Positive	Positive
Brain imaging studies	CT: No findings MRI: Positive	CT: No findings MRI: Positive

EGJ: Esophagogastric junction; LMC: Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis; CSF: Cerebrospinal fluid; CT: Computed tomography; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging.

killers were administrated with no benefit. Afterwards, steroids were administrated empirically with initial improvement of symptoms for a few days. Due to deterioration, further investigation by brain magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) revealed diffuse meningeal enhancement (Figure 1B). It was extended also into the internal auditory canal and optic nerves sheaths more into the right side. CT chest, abdomen, pelvis scans revealed only thickness in the area of gastric cardia and further investigation by an upper GI endoscopy confirmed the diagnosis of a poorly differentiated gastric adenocarcinoma with signet ring features (Figure 2). Cerebrospinal fluid cytology (CSF) confirmed the diagnosis of LMC (Figure 3). Full blood count and biochemistry tests were within normal values and tumor markers' evaluation revealed CEA = 33.3 ng/mL. Her clinical status deteriorated rapidly, was in coma, and the other day of IT with Methotrexate (MTX, 12.5 mg) the patient died, approximately within 4 wk after the initial onset of disease symptoms.

Case 2

A 51-year-old man was diagnosed with an EGJ poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma (cT3N+, M0) in July 2009. He was therefore commenced on peri-operative chemotherapy with epirubicin, cisplatin and capecitabine regimen and on 02/11/2009 he was operated (Ivor-Lewis gastrectomy, ypT2N1, R0, gr III adenocarcinoma with signet ring features, Figure 4). He remained disease-free until September 2015 when he experienced neurological symptoms such as dysphasia, headaches and temporary left side paresis. Initially, investigations by CT brain (Figure 5A), chest, abdomen, pelvis scans revealed no evidence of disease. Subsequently, a brain MRI scan revealed findings of LMC (Figure 5B). A CSF cytology investigation confirmed the diagnosis consistent with GC origin (Figure 6), meanwhile a

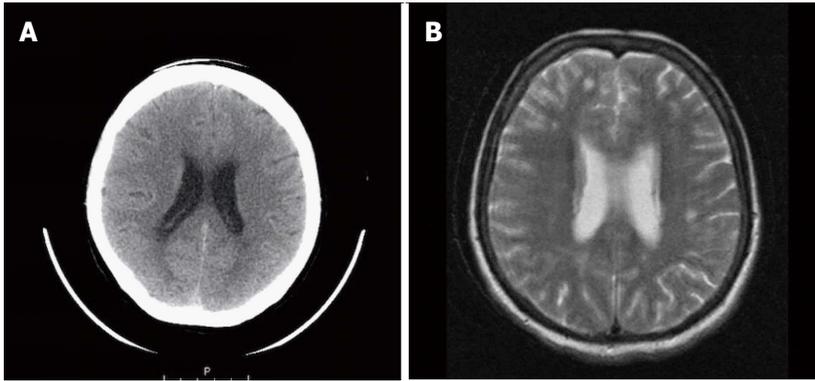


Figure 1 Patient No. 1. A: Computed tomography brain did not reveal brain lesions; B: Magnetic resonance imaging brain showed findings consistent with leptomeningeal carcinomatosis.

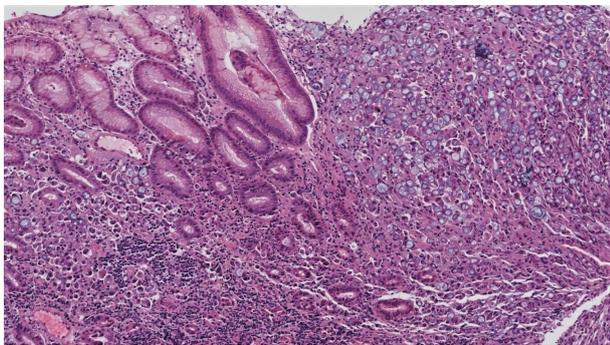


Figure 2 Patient No. 1. Diffuse infiltration of gastric mucosa from a poorly differentiated poorly cohesive gastric adenocarcinoma (including mixed adenocarcinoma with > 50% signet ring cells features (HE 100 x).

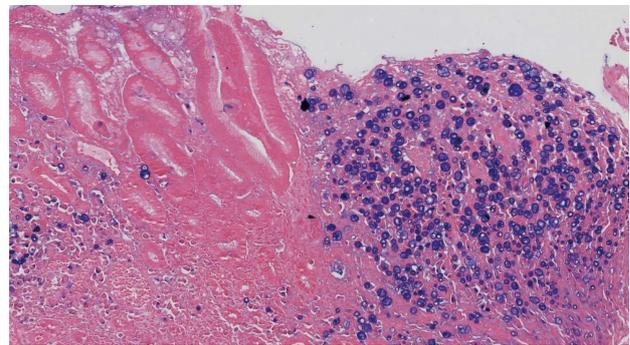


Figure 4 Patient No. 2. Alcian blue highlights difference in mucin production between cancer cells (blue) and normal gastric tissue (no presence), helping us also determine about the extent of the infiltration (Alcian blue 200 x).

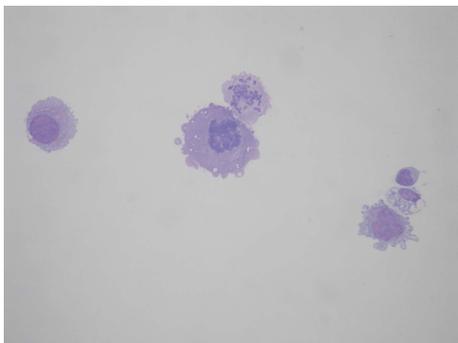


Figure 3 Patient No. 1. Four atypical cells, one lymphocyte and one macrophages next to the lymphocyte. Atypical cells are isolated, two of those show mitotic activity. The size of atypical cells and lymphocyte could be compared (Hemacolor 40 x).

flow cytometric test confirmed the presence of a non hematopoietic cell population. Full blood count and biochemistry tests were within normal values and tumor markers' evaluation revealed CEA = 6.3 ng/mL, CA 19-9 = 98.1 µg/mL. He was treated with intrathecal MTX (12.5 mg) twice-weekly with relatively good clinical response initially. After three weeks of treatment he was put on "maintenance" application once weekly, but unfortunately his performance status was rapidly deteriorated after a couple of

weeks. Therefore, his treatment was changed to MTX, Cytosine Arabinoside (40 mg) and Dexamethasone (4 mg). He received 3 and 5 applications with good clinical response, in October and in December 2009, respectively. Afterwards, the CT chest-abdomen-pelvis re-staging scans revealed no clear evidence of local recurrence or metastatic disease, meanwhile the MRI brain performed revealed slight improvement of meningeal enhancement. In July 2016, his performance status deteriorated with severe episodes of headaches, dizziness, dysphasia, visual and hearing loss and consciousness deduction. He was re-challenged with IT but with modest improvement and died in September 2016.

DISCUSSION

Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis is often presented with non specific clinical symptoms like headache, nausea and vomiting. Supratentorial involvement could cause altered mental and personality status, dysphasia and seizures. When infratentorial lesions occurred, they are mainly presented with cranial nerve palsies and related symptoms^[6,7]. The gadolinium enhanced MRI and CSF are the main investigation procedures. The sensitivity and specificity of the brain MRI are

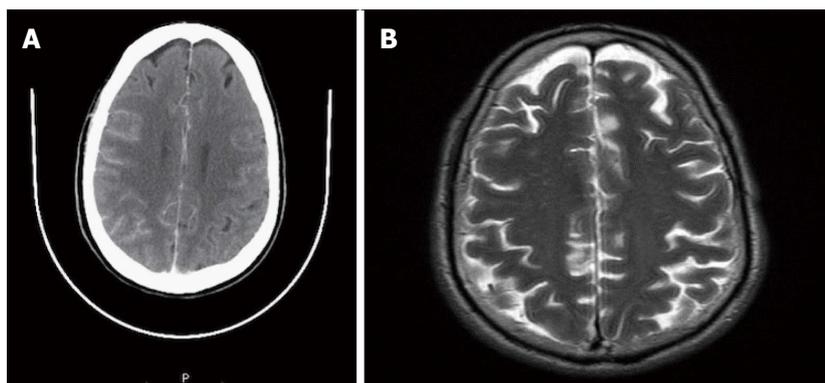


Figure 5 Patient No. 2. A: Computed tomography brain did not reveal brain lesions; B: Magnetic resonance imaging brain showed findings consistent with leptomeningeal carcinomatosis.

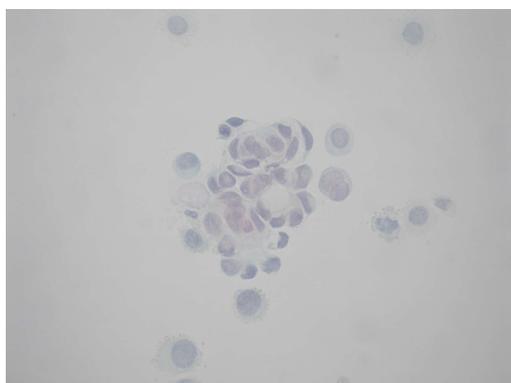


Figure 6 Patient No. 2. An irregular cluster of atypical cells. The cells show intermediate size, degeneration changes, indistinct cytoplasmic borders and moderate size of nuclei. Nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio is increased (Papanicolaou 40 ×).

66%-76% and 75%-77%, respectively, but could be almost two times higher than those of the CT^[8-10]. Approximately in 67% of cases imaging studies reveal findings such as focal or diffuse abnormal meningeal enhancement and nodules detection^[11]. Moreover, meningeal enhancement is suggestive but does not confirm the diagnosis. Infection or inflammatory causes, intracranial hypertension but even a lumbar puncture procedure before MRI scan could induce diffuse meningeal enhancement for a period of weeks to months and give false positive results^[12]. After first sampling of CSF examination the possibility of a positive result is approximately 54%. This raises to 91% after multiple cytology investigations^[6]. On the contrary, a negative cytology investigation after three lumbar punctures does not rule out the diagnosis of LMC in the context of other positive tests, like an MRI with characteristic findings.

Reviewing the literature, it is obvious that this is a rare manifestation. In a retrospective analysis of medical records from Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center of consecutive 90 patients with LMC treated from 1975 to 1981, none was diagnosed with EGJ/GC^[6]. From MD Anderson cancer Center, between 1985

to 2001 in more than 1500 EGJ/GC patients, eight cases with leptomeningeal seedings were identified^[13]. Furthermore, in a Korean retrospective multicenter analysis conducted between 1995 to 2007, 54 patients were identified with LMC from a total 22154 GC patients^[14].

There is no doubt that LMC is related with ominous prognosis. Treatment goals initially focus to improvement of neurological symptoms and quality of life and secondarily to prolongation of survival. In the meantime, median survival varies between a few weeks to months. Current treatment approaches may be IT, systemic therapy and or cranio-spinal radiation therapy (RT) but the results of these approaches are disappointing and a lot of times confusing and conflicting. There are no robust data from multicenter prospective studies to support the superiority of IT vs best supportive care. A study compared MTX/ Ara-C/hydrocortisone combination vs single agent MTX. Primary sites were the lung ($n = 33$), breast ($n = 13$) and stomach ($n = 5$). Superiority was revealed for the combination arm for median overall survival (18.6 vs 10.4 wk, $P = 0.02$) and cytology negative conversion (38.5% vs 13 %, $P = 0.03$), respectively^[15].

Moreover, a prospective study provided no benefit of IT added to systemic treatment and RT. The first group consisted of 54 patients treated with RT, IT and systemic therapy vs 50 patients treated with RT and systemic chemotherapy. There was no differences in median survival (4 mo) and long term survivors^[16]. It should be underlined, that in both groups approximately 60% of patients were diagnosed with breast cancer, 15% with lung cancer and the other 25% with various other types of cancer (the percentage of EGJ/GC cases is not clarified, if any). It should be also stated that the aforementioned studies reviewed, reflect various solid tumors with highly variable prognosis, including breast cancer which has a more indolent history, and the regimens of IT chemotherapy and RT administered are not distinguished based on the various types of solid tumors.

In addition, a multicenter retrospective analysis of patients with GC and LMC revealed no evidence of an additional effect of cranio-spinal RT to IT^[14]. Due to the fact that in most cases blood brain barrier is destroyed and LMC is related with highly permeable blood vessels in vascularized tumors, it could be also speculated that systemic therapy may be effective. An experimental model supports this hypothesis^[17].

In conclusion, even LMC is rare in patients diagnosed with EGJC and GC, physicians should be alerted when neurological symptoms occurred, are persistent and could not be explained. Furthermore, a single diagnosis test procedure itself is not absolutely sensitive and the investigation algorithm should comprise a gadolinium enhanced brain MRI and repeated CSF cytology tests. Unfortunately, disease prognosis is dismal and newly developed targeted drugs with improved CNS penetration and better outcomes remains a priority.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Case characteristics

Two patients are presented. Both of them were presented with severe neurological symptoms and their further investigation revealed the initial diagnosis and the recurrence of gastric cancer (GC)/esophagogastric junction cancer (EGJC), respectively.

Clinical diagnosis

Two cases are presented. One initially diagnosed with GC and leptomeningeal carcinomatosis (LMC) but no other evidence of metastatic disease and the other one initially diagnosed with EGJC, who recurred solitary with leptomeningeal seedings several years after the initial diagnosis and treatment.

Differential diagnosis

Meningeal enhancement is suggestive but does not confirm the diagnosis. Infection or inflammatory causes, intracranial hypertension but even a lumbar puncture procedure before magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan could induce diffuse meningeal enhancement give false positive results.

Laboratory diagnosis

Elevation of CEA levels were reported in both patients and mild elevation of CA19-9 was reported in patient with EGJC recurrence.

Imaging diagnosis

Brain MRI images revealed diffuse meningeal enhancement consistent with LMC.

Pathological diagnosis

CSF cytology confirmed the diagnosis of LMC in both patients.

Treatment

Chemotherapy, IT therapy.

Related reports

Only a few cases of EGJC and GC patients have been reported with LMC as an upfront disease manifestation or as solitary disease recurrence.

Term explanation

EGJC/GC are diseases with high malignant potential.

Experiences and lessons

Even LMC is extremely rare in patients diagnosed with EGJC and GC,

physicians should be alerted when neurological symptoms occurred, are persistent and could not be explained.

REFERENCES

- GLOBOCAN 2012.** Stomach Cancer: estimated incidence, mortality and prevalence worldwide in 2012. Available from: URL: <http://www.globocan.iarc.fr/>
- Kokkoris CP.** Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis. How does cancer reach the pia-arachnoid? *Cancer* 1983; **51**: 154-160 [PMID: 6336971 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19830101)51:1<154::AID-CNCR2820510130>3.0.CO;2-K]
- Grossman SA, Krabak MJ.** Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis. *Cancer Treat Rev* 1999; **25**: 103-119 [PMID: 10395835 DOI: 10.1053/ctrv.1999.0119]
- Kim M.** Intracranial involvement by metastatic advanced gastric carcinoma. *J Neurooncol* 1999; **43**: 59-62 [PMID: 10448872 DOI: 10.1023/A:1006156204385]
- Pentheroudakis G, Pavlidis N.** Management of leptomeningeal malignancy. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2005; **6**: 1115-1125 [PMID: 15957966 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.6.7.1115]
- Wasserstrom WR, Glass JP, Posner JB.** Diagnosis and treatment of leptomeningeal metastases from solid tumors: experience with 90 patients. *Cancer* 1982; **49**: 759-772 [PMID: 6895713 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19820215)49:4<759::AID-CNCR2820490427>3.0.CO;2-7]
- Kountourakis P, Ardavanis A.** Visual and hearing loss due to colocalized meningeal carcinomatosis: a case-based review. *Clin Adv Hematol Oncol* 2010; **8**: 567-568 [PMID: 20966894]
- Sze G, Soletsky S, Bronen R, Krol G.** MR imaging of the cranial meninges with emphasis on contrast enhancement and meningeal carcinomatosis. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 1989; **10**: 965-975 [PMID: 2505542 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.153.5.1039]
- Straathof CS, de Bruin HG, Dippel DW, Vecht CJ.** The diagnostic accuracy of magnetic resonance imaging and cerebrospinal fluid cytology in leptomeningeal metastasis. *J Neurol* 1999; **246**: 810-814 [PMID: 10525979 DOI: 10.1007/s004150050459]
- Chamberlain MC.** Comparative spine imaging in leptomeningeal metastases. *J Neurooncol* 1995; **23**: 233-238 [PMID: 7673985 DOI: 10.1007/BF01059954]
- Lee JL, Kang YK, Kim TW, Chang HM, Lee GW, Ryu MH, Kim E, Oh SJ, Lee JH, Kim SB, Kim SW, Suh C, Lee KH, Lee JS, Kim WK, Kim SH.** Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis in gastric cancer. *J Neurooncol* 2004; **66**: 167-174 [PMID: 15015782 DOI: 10.1023/B:NEON.0000013462.43156.f4]
- Mason WP, Yeh SD, DeAngelis LM.** 111Indium-diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid cerebrospinal fluid flow studies predict distribution of intrathecally administered chemotherapy and outcome in patients with leptomeningeal metastases. *Neurology* 1998; **50**: 438-444 [PMID: 9484369 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.50.2.438]
- Lisenko Y, Kumar AJ, Yao J, Ajani J, Ho L.** Leptomeningeal carcinomatosis originating from gastric cancer: report of eight cases and review of the literature. *Am J Clin Oncol* 2003; **26**: 165-170 [PMID: 12714889 DOI: 10.1097/0000421-200304000-00013]
- Oh SY, Lee SJ, Lee J, Lee S, Kim SH, Kwon HC, Lee GW, Kang JH, Hwang IG, Jang JS, Lim HY, Park YS, Kang WK, Kim HJ.** Gastric leptomeningeal carcinomatosis: multi-center retrospective analysis of 54 cases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5086-5090 [PMID: 19860003 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5086]
- Kim DY, Lee KW, Yun T, Park SR, Jung JY, Kim DW, Kim TY, Heo DS, Bang YJ, Kim NK.** Comparison of intrathecal chemotherapy for leptomeningeal carcinomatosis of a solid tumor: methotrexate alone versus methotrexate in combination with cytosine arabinoside and hydrocortisone. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2003; **33**: 608-612 [PMID: 14769837 DOI: 10.1093/jco/hyg118]
- Bokstein F, Lossos A, Siegal T.** Leptomeningeal metastases from solid tumors: a comparison of two prospective series treated with and without intra-cerebrospinal fluid chemotherapy. *Cancer* 1998; **82**: 1756-1763 [PMID: 9576299 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0142(19980501)82:9<1764::AID-CNCR24>3.0.CO;2-1]
- Siegal T, Sandbank U, Gabizon A, Siegal T, Mizrahi R, Ben-David**

E, Catane R. Alteration of blood-brain-CSF barrier in experimental meningeal carcinomatosis. A morphologic and adriamycin-

penetration study. *J Neurooncol* 1987; 4: 233-242 [PMID: 3559664 DOI: 10.1007/BF00150615]

P- Reviewer: Aoyagi K, Fukuchi M, Ilson D **S- Editor:** Kong JX
L- Editor: Stewart GJ **E- Editor:** Wang CH





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7901 Stoneridge Drive, Suite 501, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

